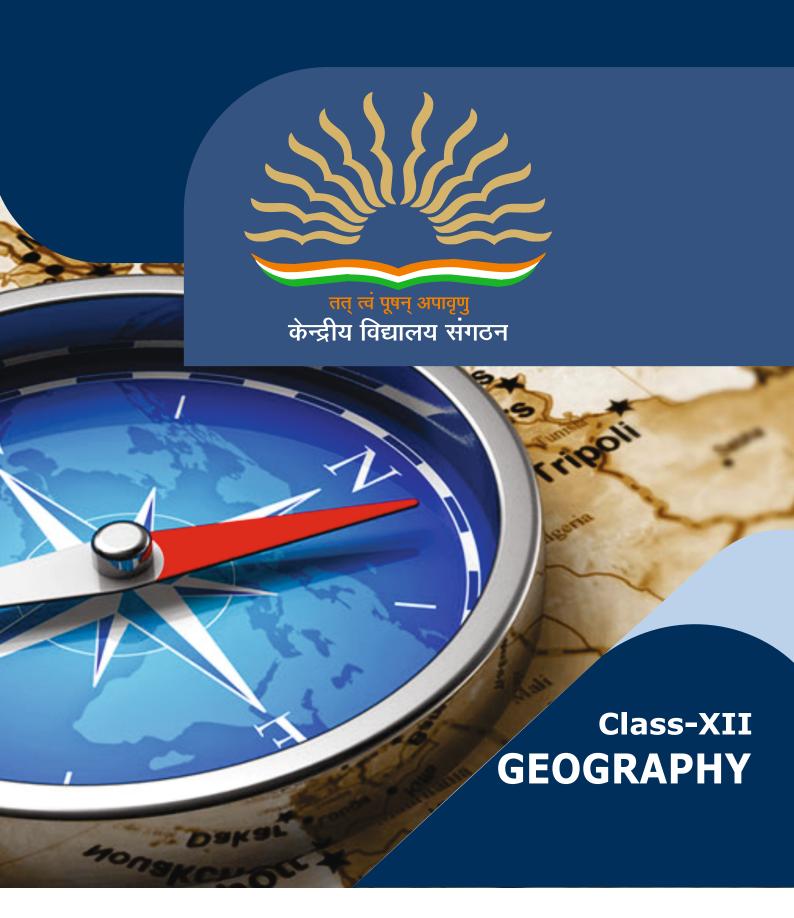
# STUDENT SUPPORT MATERIAL

**Session: 2019-20** 



# STUDENT SUPPORT MATERIAL

Class XII Geography



**Session 2019-20** 

# KENDRIYA VIDYALAYA SANGATHAN NEW DELHI

संतोष कुमार मल्ल, भा.प्र.से. आयुक्त Santosh Kumar Mall, I.A.S. Commissioner



# केन्द्रीय विद्यालय संगठन KENDRIYA VIDYALAYA SANGATHAN

18, संस्थागत क्षेत्र, शहीद जीत सिंह मार्ग, नई दिल्ली-110016 दूरभाष : 91-11-26512579, फैक्स : 91-11-26852680

18, Institutional Area, Shaheed Jeet Singh Marg, New Delhi-110016 (India) Tel.: 91-11-26512579. Fax: 91-11-26852680

E-mail: commissioner@kvsedu.org, Website: www.kvsangathan.nic.in

#### A WORD TO MY DEAR STUDENTS

It gives me great pleasure in presenting the Students' Support Material to all KV students of class XII.

The material has been prepared keeping in mind your needs when you are preparing for final exams and wish to revise and practice questions or when you want to test your ability to complete the question paper in the time allotted or when you come across a question while studying that needs an immediate answer but going through the text book will take time or when you want to revise the complete concept or idea in just a minute or try your hand at a question from a previous CBSE Board exam paper or the Competitive exam to check your understanding of the chapter or unit you have just finished. This material will support you in any way you want to use it.

A team of dedicated and experienced teachers with expertise in their subjects has prepared this material after a lot of exercise. Care has been taken to include only those items that are relevant and are in addition to or in support of the text book. This material should not be taken as a substitute to the NCERT text book but it is designed to supplement it.

The Students' Support Material has all the important aspects required by you; a design of the question paper, syllabus, all the units/chapters or concepts in points, mind maps and information in tables for easy reference, sample test items from every chapter and question papers for practice along with previous years Board exam question papers.

I am sure that the Support Material will be used by both students and teachers and I am confident that the material will help you perform well in your exams.

Happy learning!

Santosh Kumar Mall Commissioner, KVS

#### **FOREWORD**

The Students' Support Material is a product of an in-house academic exercise undertaken by our subject teachers under the supervision of subject expert at different levels to provide the students a comprehensive, yet concise, learning support tool for consolidation of your studies. It consists of lessons in capsule form, mind maps, concepts with flow charts, pictorial representation of chapters wherever possible, crossword puzzles, question bank of short and long answer type questions with previous years' CBSE question papers.

The material has been developed keeping in mind latest CBSE curriculum and question paper design. This material provides the students a valuable window on precise information and it covers all essential components that are required for effective revision of the subject.

In order to ensure uniformity in terms of content, design, standard and presentation of the material, it has been fine tuned at KVS Hqrs level.

I hope this material will prove to be a good tool for quick revision and will serve the purpose of enhancing students' confidence level to help them perform better. Planned study blended with hard work, good time management and sincerity will help the students reach the pinnacle of success.

Best of Luck.

U.N. Khaware

Additional Commissioner (Acad.)

# Geography



# STUDENT SUPPORT MATERIAL

#### **ADVISORS**

# Shri Santosh Kumar Mall, IAS, Commissioner, KVS (HQ), New Delhi

Sh. Saurabh Jain, IAS Additional. Commissioner (Admn.) KVS (HQ), New Delhi. Sh. U.N Khaware, Additional. Commissioner (Acad) KVS (HQ), New Delhi.

#### **CO-ORDINATION TEAM KVS (HQ)**

- Dr.E. Prabhakar, Joint Commissioner (Training/Finance)KVS(HQ),New Delhi.
- Smt. InduKaushik, Deputy Commissioner(Acad), KVS (HQ), New Delhi.
- Shri Ravindra Kumar Sharma, Assistant Education Officer, KVS(HQ), New Delhi.

#### **CONTENT TEAM**

- Mr. Ishampal, Deputy Commissioner, Bhopal Region
- Mr. Ajay Pant, Deputy Commissioner, Lucknow
- Ms. Rupa Ajeet Sriram, PGT Geography, KV No-1 Bhopal
- Ms. Mohini Ojha, PGT Geography, KV No-1 Indore
- Mr. Subhash Panchonia, PGT Geography, KV Khandwa
- Mr. Ashutosh Pandey, PGT Geography, KV Dinjan Cantt (Assam)
- Mr. Vikrama Ram, PGT Geography, KV OIL Duliajan (Assam)
- Mr. S.K. Meena, PGT Geography, KV AFS Tezpur (Assam)

#### **REVIEW TEAM**

- Mr. D. Manivannan, Deputy Commissioner, Varanasi Region.
- Ms. Menaxi Jain, Assistant Commissioner, Varanasi Region.
- Mr. Ajay Raj Tripathi, PGT(Geography), KV Mau.
- Mr. K.A. Singh, PGT(Geography), KV DLW Varanasi.
- Mr. Jitendra Kumar, PGT(Geography), KV AFS Bamrauali, Prayagraj

Typing, Type-setting & Designing M/s Choudhary Printing Press

Near Mohanpur Devi Asthan, Punaichak, Patna-800 023 Mob.: 0943096087, 09835492012 T/F: 0612-2546751 E-mail: <a href="mailto:choudharyprintingpress@gmail.com">choudharyprintingpress@gmail.com</a>

# **CONTENT**

SectionNo.	PARTICULARS
1	General
2	Syllabus and design of Question paper
3	Sample Question paper- CBSE new pattern
4	Gist and Subjective QA of BooK-I
5	Multiple Choice Questions of Book -I
6	Gist and Subjective QA of BooK-II
7	Multiple Choice Questions of Book -II
8	Sample papers ( 3Sets)
9	Map Based Questions ( BOOK-I & II )
10	Examination Tips for students

# **SECTION-2**

#### **GEOGRAPHY**

XII(2019-20)

(Code No. 029)

Geography is introduced as an elective subject at the senior secondary stage. After ten years of general education, students branch out at the beginning of this stage and are exposed to the rigors of the discipline for the first time. Being an entry point for the higher education, students choose Geography for pursuing theiracademicinterestand, therefore, need a broader and deeper understanding of the subject. Forothers, geographical knowledge is useful in daily lives because it is a valuable medium for the education of young people. Its contribution lies in the content, cognitive processes, skills and values that Geography promotes and thus helps the students explore, understand and evaluate the environmental and social dimensions of the world in abettermanner.

Since Geography explores the relationship between people and their environment, it includes studies of physical and human environments and their interactions at different scales-local, state/region, nation and the world. The fundamental principles responsible for the varieties in the distributional pattern of physical and human features and phenomena over the earth's surface need to be understood properly. Application of these principles would be taken up through selected case studies from the world and India.

#### Objectives:

The course in Geography will help learners to:

- Familiarizewithkeyconcepts, terminologyandcoreprinciples of Geography.
- Describe locations and correlate with GeographicalPerspectives.
- List/describewhatstudentsmightsee,hear,andsmellataplace.
- List/describe ways a place is linked with otherplaces.
- Compare conditions and connections in one place to another.
- Analyze/describe how conditions in one place can affect nearbyplaces.
- Identify regions as places that are similar orconnected.
- Describe and interpret the spatial pattern features on a thematicmap.
- Search for, recognize and understand the processes and patterns of the spatial arrangement of the natural features as well as human aspects and phenomena on theearth'ssurface.
- Understand and analyse the inter-relationship between physical and human environments and utilize such knowledge in reflecting on issues related to community.
- Apply geographical knowledge and methods of inquiry to emerging situationsor

- problems at different levels-local, regional, national and global.
- Develop geographical skills, relating to collection, processing and analysis of spatial data/ information and preparation of report including maps and graphs and use of computers where ever possible; and to be sensitive toissues.

## COURSE STRUCTURE Class XII (2019-20)

OneTheoryPaper 70 Marks

3Hours

Part	Units	No. of Periods	Marks
A	Fundamentals of Human Geography	90	35 Marks
	Unit 1: Human Geography	05	
	Unit 2: People	18	
	Unit 3: Human Activities	28	30
	Unit 4: Transport, Communication and Trade	24	1
	Unit 5: Human settlements	10	1
	Map Work	05	5
В	India: People and Economy	90	35 Marks
	Unit 6: People	15	
	Unit 7: Human Settlements	10	
	Unit 8: Resources and Development	30	30
	Unit 9: Transport, Communication and International Trade	15	
	Unit 10: Geographical Perspective on selected issues and problems	15	
	Map Work	05	5
	Total	180	70 Marks
С	Practical Work	40	30 Marks
	Unit 1: Processing of Data and Thematic Mapping	25	15
	Unit 2: Field study or Spatial Information Technology	15	10
	Practical Record Book and Viva Voce		5

### **COURSE CONTENT**

Part A:	Fundamentals of Human Geography	90Periods
Unit 1:	Human Geography: Nature and Scope	05Periods
Unit 2:	People	18Periods
	Population-distribution, density and growth	
	Population change-spatial patterns and structure; determinants of populationchange	
	Population Composition - age-sex ratio;rural-urban Composition	
	Human development - concept; selected indicators, international comparisons	
Unit 3:	Human Activities	28Periods
	Primary activities - concept and changing trends; gathering, pastoral, mining, subsistence agriculture, modern agriculture; people engaged in agricultural and allied activities - some examples from selected countries	
	Secondary activities-concept; manufacturing: types - household, small scale, large scale; agro based and mineral based industries; people engaged in secondary activities - some examples from selectedcountries	
	Tertiary activities-concept; trade, transport and tourism; services; people engaged in tertiary activities - some examples from selectedcountries	
	Quatenary activities-concept; people engaged in quatenary activities - case study from selectedcountries	
Unit 4:	Transport, Communication and Trade	24 Periods
	Land transport - roads, railways; trans-continental railways	
	Water transport- inland waterways; major oceanroutes	
	Air transport- Intercontinental airroutes	
	Oil and gaspipelines	
	Satellite communication and cyber space- importance and usage for geographical information; use of GPS	
	International trade- bases and changing patterns; portsas gateways of international trade; role of WTO in internationaltrade	

Unit 5:	Human Settlements	10 Periods
	Settlement types - rural and urban; morphology of cities (case study); distribution of mega cities; problems of human settlements in developing countries	
Map Worl	05 Periods	
Part B:	India: People and Economy	90 Periods
Unit 6:	People	15 Periods
Г		1
	Population: distribution, density and growth; composition of population - linguistic, religious; sex, rural-urban and	
	occupational-regional variations in growth ofpopulation  Migration: international, national-causes and	
	consequences	
	Human development: selected indicators and regional patterns	
	Population, environment and development	
Unit 7:	Human Settlements	10 Periods
	Rural settlements - types and distribution	
	Urban settlements - types, distribution and functional classification	

Unit 8:	Resources and Development  Land resources- general land use; agricultural land use; geographical conditions and distribution of major crops (Wheat, Rice, Tea, Coffee, Cotton, Jute, Sugarcane and Rubber); agricultural development and problems  Water resources-availability and utilization-irrigation, domestic, industrial and other uses; scarcity of water and conservation methods-rain water harvesting and watershedmanagement  Mineral and energy resources- distribution of metallic (Iron ore, Copper, Bauxite, Manganese); non-metallic (Mica, Salt) minerals; conventional (Coal, Petroleum, Natural gas and Hydroelectricity) and non-conventional energy sources (solar, wind, biogas) and conservation  Industries - types, factors of industrial location; distribution and changing pattern of selected industries-iron and steel, cotton textiles, sugar, petrochemicals, and knowledge based industries; impact of liberalization, privatization and globalization on industrial location; industrialclusters  Planning in India- target group area planning (case study); idea of sustainable development (casestudy)	30 Periods
Unit 9:	Transport, Communication and International Trade  Transportandcommunication-roads, railways, waterways and airways: oil and gas pipelines; Geographicalinformationandcommunicationnetworks	15 Periods
	International trade- changing pattern of India's foreign trade; sea ports and their hinterland and airports	
Unit 10:	Geographical Perspective on selected issues and problems  Environmental pollution; urban-wastedisposal  Urbanization, rural-urban migration; problems ofslums  Landdegradation	15 Periods
	on locating and labelling of features based on above outline map of India.	05 Periods
Part C:	Practical Work	40 Periods

Unit 1:	Processing of Data and Thematic Mapping  Type and Sources of data: Primary, Secondary and othersources  Tabulating and processing of data; calculation of averages, measures of centraltendency  Representation of data- construction of diagrams: bars, circles and flowchart; thematic maps; construction ofdot; choropleth and isoplethsmaps  Data analysis and generation of diagrams, graphs and other visual diagrams using computers	25 Periods
Unit 2:	Field Study or Spatial Information Technology  Field visit and study: map orientation, observation and preparation of sketch; survey on any one of the local concerns; pollution, ground water changes, land use and land-use changes, poverty, energy issues, soil degradation, impact of floods and drought, catchment area of school, Market survey and Household survey (any one topic of local concern may be taken up for the study; observation and questionnaire survey may be adopted for the data collection; collected data may be tabulated and analyzed with diagrams and maps). Students can be given different topics to get more insight into various problems of society.	15 Periods
	OR	
	<ul> <li>Spatial InformationTechnology</li> <li>Introduction to GIS; hardware requirements and software modules; data formats; raster and vector data, datainput,</li> </ul>	
	editing and overlay and buffer.	

#### Prescribed Books:

- 1. Fundamentals of Human Geography, Class XII, Publishedby NCERT
- 2. India People and Economy, Class XII, Publishedby NCERT
- 3. Practical Work in Geography, Class XII, Publishedby NCERT

**Note**: 1.The above textbooks are also available on website **www.ncert.nic.in/ebooks.html** in both hindi and english medium.

# Fundamentals of Human Geography Class XII - Textbook I (NCERT)

Map Items for identification only on outline political map of the World.

Unit-1	Ch1	Nil	
Unit-2	Ch. 2 to 4	1	The largest country in each continent in terms of area
Unit-3	Ch. 5 to 7	1	Areas of subsistence gathering
	Primary Activities	2	Major areas of nomadic herding of the world
	·	3	Major areas of commercial livestock rearing
		4	Major areas of extensive commercial grain faming
		5	Major areas of mixed farming of the World
		6	Major areas of Mediterraneanagricultureof the World
	Secondary Activities	1	Ruhr region, Silicon Valley, Appalachian region, Great Lakesregion
Unit - 4	Ch. 8 to 9	2	TranscontinentalRailways: Terminal Stationsof Transcontinentalrailways– Trans siberian, Trans Canadian, Tran Australian Railways
		3	Major Sea Ports:
			Europe: North Cape, London, Hamburg
			North America: Vancouver, San Francisco, New Orleans
			South America: Rio De Janeiro, Colon, Valparaiso
			Africa: Suez, Durban and Cape Town
			Asia: Yokohama, Shanghai, Hong Kong, Aden,Karachi, Kolkata
			Australia: Perth, Sydney, Melbourne
		4.	Inland Waterways: Suez canal, Panama canal, Rhine waterway and St. Lawrence Seaway
		5.	Major Airports:
			Asia: Tokyo, Beijing, Mumbai, Jedda, Aden
			Africa: Johannesburg & Nairobi
			Europe: Moscow, London, Paris, Berlin and Rome
			North America: Chicago, New Orleans, MexicoCity
			South America: Buenos Aires, Santiago
			Australia: Drarwin and Wellington
Unit - 5	Ch. 10		Mega cities of the world – Tokyo, Delhi, Shanghai, Mumbai, Saopaulo

#### India - People and economy

#### ClassXII-TextbookII(NCERT)

Map Items for locating and labelling only on the outline political map of India

Units - 6 & Ch. 1 to 4

- State with highest level of urbanization and lowestlevel Ofurbanization
- One state with highest level of HDI & One lowest levelofHDI
- Statewithhigherlevelofpopulation density &onestatewith lowest level of populationdensity
- One out migratingstate
- One inmigrating state
- Any city with more than 10 millionpopulation Greater Mumbai, Delhi, Kolkata, Chennai, Bengaluru

Unit - 8 Ch. 5 to 9

Leading producing states of the following crops:

(a) Rice (b) Wheat (c) Jowar (d) Cotton,(e) Jute (f) Sugarcane (g) Tea and (h) Coffee

#### Mines:

- Iron-ore mines: Mayurbhani, Bailadila, Ratnagiri, Bellary
- Manganese mines: Balaghat, Shimoga
- Copper mines: Hazaribagh, Singhbhum, Khetari
- Bauxite mines: Katni, Bilaspur and Koraput
- Coal mines: Jharia, Bokaro, Raniganj, Neyveli
- Oil Refineries: Mathura, Jamnager, Baronilndustries

Iron and Steel Plants:Bhadravati, Bhilai, Bokaro, Durgapur, Rourkela and Jameshedpur

Cotton Textile:Surat, Varanasi, Murshidabad, Solapur and Coimbatore

Software Technology Parks: Gandhinagar, Shrinagar, Mohali, Noida, Indore, Hyderabad, Bengaluru and Major Industrial Regions

#### Unit-9 Ch. 10 -11

- Transport:
- (i) Importantnodesonnorthsouthcorridor,eastwestcorridor&golde nquadrieteral
- (ii) Major Sea Ports: Kandla, Mumbai, Marmagao, Kochi, Mangalore, Tuticorin, Chennai, Vishakhapatnam, Paradwip, Haldia
- (iii) International Air ports: Ahmedabad, Mumbai, Bengaluru, Chennai, Kolkata, Guwahati, Delhi, Amritsar, Thiruvananthapuram &Hyderabad

#### Unit-10 Ch.12

# **SECTION -3**

#### **CBSE-SAMPLE QUESTION PAPER**

(2019-2020)

#### **GEOGRAPHY (029)**

#### **CLASS-XII**

Time:3hours Max. Marks 70

#### **General Instructions:**

- i. There are 30 questions inall.
- ii. All questions are compulsory.
- iii. Question numbers 1 to 18 are Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) carrying 1 mark each. Write only the correct answer in your answer sheets.
- iv. Question numbers 19 to 22 are short answer questions carrying 3 marks each. Answer to each of these questions should not exceed 80-100words.
- v. Question numbers 23 to 28 are long answer questions carrying 5 marks each. Answer to each of these questions should not exceed 150words.
- vi. Question numbers 29 and 30 are related to identification or location and labeling of geographical features on maps, carrying 5 markseach.
- vii. Outline map of India and World provided to you must be attached within your answer book.
- viii. Use of template or stencils for drawing outline maps is allowed.

	SECTION A	
Q1	Which one of the following is the largest linguistic group of India?	1
	a. Sino –Tibetan	
	b. Indo –Aryan	
	c. Austric	
	d. Dravidian	
	OR	
	Which one of the following periods had witnessed rapid growth of population.	
	a. Before 1921	
	b. 1921 - 1951	
	c. 1951 –1981	
	d. After 1981	
Q2	Which one of the following is the main reason for male migration in India?	1
	a. Education	
	b. Business	
	c. Work andemployment	
	d. Marriage	
Q3	Identify the country with the highest sex ratio in the world	1
	a. Latvia	
	b. United ArabEmirates	
	c. Japan	
	d. France	
	OR	
	Which one of the following figures represents the working age group of the	
	population?	
	a. 15 to 65years	
	b. 15 to 64years	
	c. 15 to 66years	
	d. 15 to 59years	

Q4	Which one of the following group of cities have been arranged in the sequence of	1
	their ranks i.e., 1,2,3 and 4 in size ?	
	a. Greater Mumbai, Bangaluru, Kolkata,Chennai.	
	b. Delhi, Greater Mumbai, Chennai,Kolkata.	
	c. Kolkata, Greater Mumbai, Chennai, Delhi.	
	d. Greater Mumbai, Kolkata, Delhi,Chennai.	
	OR	
	Palli and nagla belong to which one of the following rural settlements-	
	a. Clustered	
	b. Semi-clustered	
	c. Hamleted	
	d. Dispersed orisolated.	
Q5	Which one of the following is not a Push factor?	1
	a. Water Shortage	
	b. Medical/Educationalfacilities	
	c. Unemployment	
	d. Epidemics	
Q6	Which one of the following best is the best description of Development?	1
	a. An increase insize	
	b. A constant insize	
	c. A positive change inquality	
	d. A simple change inquality	

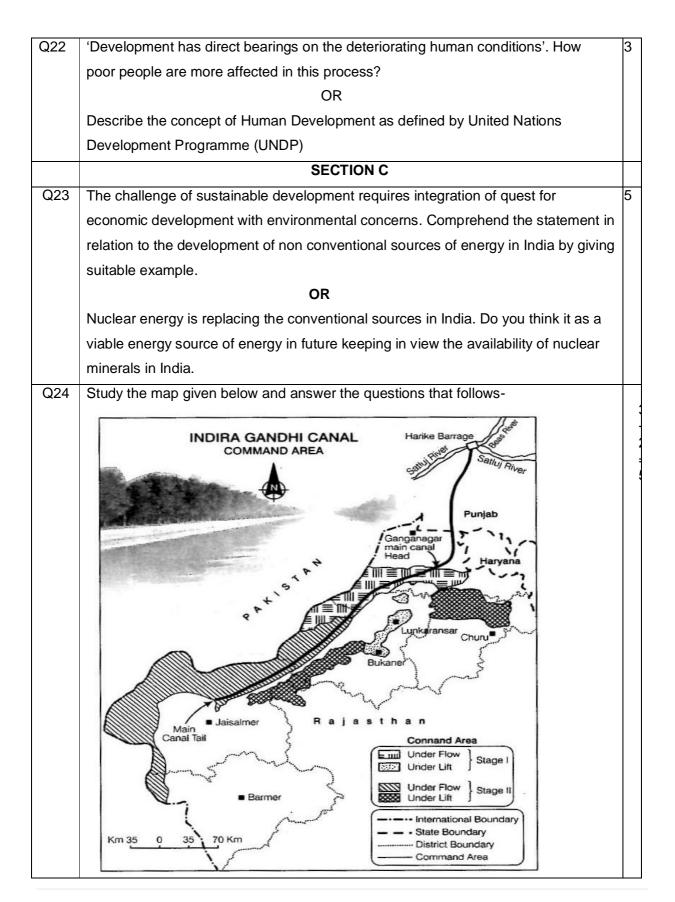
Q7	Which one of the following is not a Plantation Crop?	1
	a. Coffee	
	b. Sugarcane	
	c. Wheat	
	d. Rubber	
Q8	Which one of the following types of cultivation was developed by European	1
	colonists?	
	a. Kolkhoz	
	b. MixedFarming	
	c. Viticulture	
	d. Plantation	
Q9	Which one of the following does not follow Monoculture?	1
	a. Commercial GrainFarming	
	b. PlantationAgriculture	
	c. MixedFarming	
	d. DairyFarming	
Q10	Which one of the following forms of settlement develops along either side of roads,	1
	rivers or canals?	
	a. Circular	
	b. Linear	
	c. Cross Shaped	
	d. Square	
Q11	Which one of the following types of economic activities dominates in all rural	1
	settlements?	
	a. Primary	
	b. Tertiary	
	c. Secondary	
	d. Quaternary	
Q12	The first urban settlement to reach a population of one million was:	1
	a. Paris	
	b. NewYork	
	c. London	
	d. Canberra	

Q13	Identify the land locked harbor from the followings-	1
	a. Vishakhapatnam	
	b. Mumbai	
	c. Ennor	
	d. Haldia	
Q14	Which one of the following is the longest national highway of India?	1
	a. NH-1	
	b. NH-7	
	c. NH-6	
	d. NH-8	
Q15	Complete the following table by writing appropriate answer:	1
	Means of Communications	
	Letter, Telephone, Telegram, Fax, e-mail, Radio, Television, Cinema, Satellite,	
	Internet, etc. Newspaper, Magazines, Public meetings,	
	Seminar and conferences	
	S-10-31-13-13-13-13-13-13-13-13-13-13-13-13-	
Q16	Name the Headquarters of Northern Railway Zone of India	1
	a. Lucknow	
	b. Kanpur	
	c. NewDelhi	
	d. Chandigarh	
Q17	Land degradation in irrigated areas is caused by which of following reason?	1
	a. Gullyerosion	
	b. Winderosion	
	c. Salinization ofsoil	
	d. Siltation ofland	
Q18	South-West monsoon in India coincides with which cropping season?	1
	a. Kharif	
	b. Rabi	

	c. Zaid			
	d. None of theabove			
	SECTION B			
Q19	"The chief gateways of the world of international trade are the harbours and ports". 3			
	Justify the statement with examples.			
Q20	·	3		
<u> </u>	Examples.			
Q21	Study the pie-chart given below and answer the questions that follow-	3		
Q21	Surface Water Withdrawals  Surface Water Withdrawals  Domestic  9% Industrial 2%  Source: Earth Trend 2001, World Resource Institute, as given in Govt. of India (2002) Reporting Fig.: Sectoral Usage of Surface Water  a. Which sector's share is the maximum in the usage of surface and ground water?  b. What is the percentage of agricultural sector in the usage of surfacewater and Groundwater?  c. Why the development of irrigation was assigned a very high priority in the			
	Five years plans?  For visually impaired candidates ( in place of Q. No. 21)			
	a. Name the two sources where water is available forirrigation.	1		
	b. Which sector of economy uses the maximum amount of water Inour			
	country?	1		

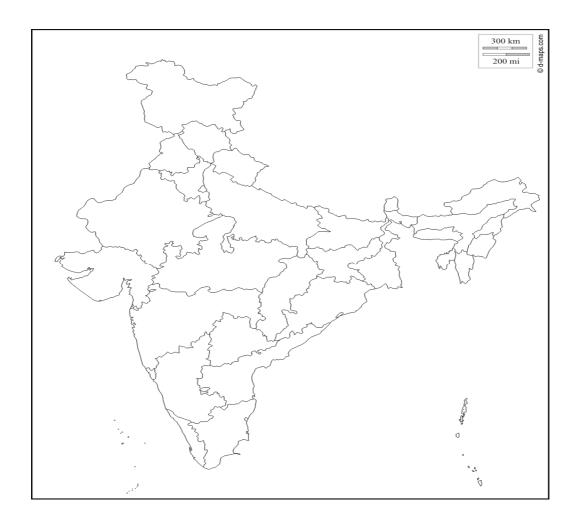
c. Why is development of irrigation was assigned a very high priority infive

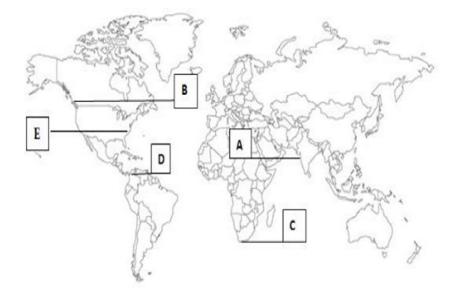
years plans?



	a. What is the difference between the two areas shown as 'Under Flow'and	
	'Under Lift' system of irrigation.	
	b. Name any four districts that are benefited by the command area of the canal	
	in stage I and stageII	
	For visually impaired candidates ( in place of Q. No. 24)	
	<ul> <li>a. How has the introduction of Indira Gandhi Canal irrigation in the dry lands of Rajasthan influenced the environmental conditions of the region positively? Explain in three points.</li> </ul>	3
	<ul> <li>Name any four districts benefitted by the Indira Gandhi Canal irrigation system.</li> </ul>	2
Q25		5
	examples.	
	OR	
	Explain why high-tech industries in many countries are being attracted to the peripheral areas of major metropolitan centres?	
Q26	,	5
	development of Quaternary Service." Explain the statement with suitable examples.	
Q27	What are the modes by which cyber space will expand the contemporary economic	5
	and social space of humans?	
	OR	
	Which are the major regions of the world having a dense network of airways?	
	Explain with examples.	
Q28	Land degradation caused by human made processes are more harmful than natural	5
	processes in India. Analyse the statement with suitable examples.	
	OR	
	How has Noise pollution become hazardous in many big cities of India? Explain by	
	giving suitable examples.	
Q29	On the outline map of India mark and indicate the following features (any five)	5
	a. State having highest urbanpopulation	
	b. Software technology park of Telangana	
	c. International airport located inAssam	
	d. Eastern terminal point of GoldenQuadrilateral	
	e. Copper mine located inRajasthan	
	f. Bauxite mines inOdisha	
	g. Southern terminal station of North-Southcorridor.	

	For visually impaired candidates (in place of Q. No. 29)Attempt any five  a. Which state in India has highest urbanpopulation? b. Name the Software technology park ofTelangana. c. Name the international airport located inAssam. d. Which is the eastern terminal of GoldenQuadrilateral? e. Name the copper mines ofRajasthan. f. Write the name of Bauxite mine ofOdisha. g. Which is the southern terminal of North SouthCorridor?	1x5=5
Q30	On the given political map of the world, following five features are shown. Identify	5
	these features with the help of the given key and write them on the blanks marked	
	A ,B , C , D and E	
	A. A Mega city	
	B. A majorsea-port	
	C. Grasslands of Africa with extensive commercial grainfarming	
	D. An important ShippingCanal	
	E. Industrial region of theUS.	
	For visually impaired candidates (in place of Q. No. 30)  a. Write the name of Mega City located in WesternIndia. b. Name the major seaport located on the Pacific coast ofCanada. c. Name the Grasslands of Africa with extensive Commercial grain farming. d. Which is the important waterway of CentralAmerica? e. Name the Industrial region of EasternU.S.A.	1x5=5





1

#### **CBSE-SAMPLE QUESTION PAPER**

(2019-2020)

## **GEOGRAPHY (029)**

#### **CLASS-XII**

#### **MARKING SCHEME**

Time:3hours Max.marks70

#### **General Instructions:**

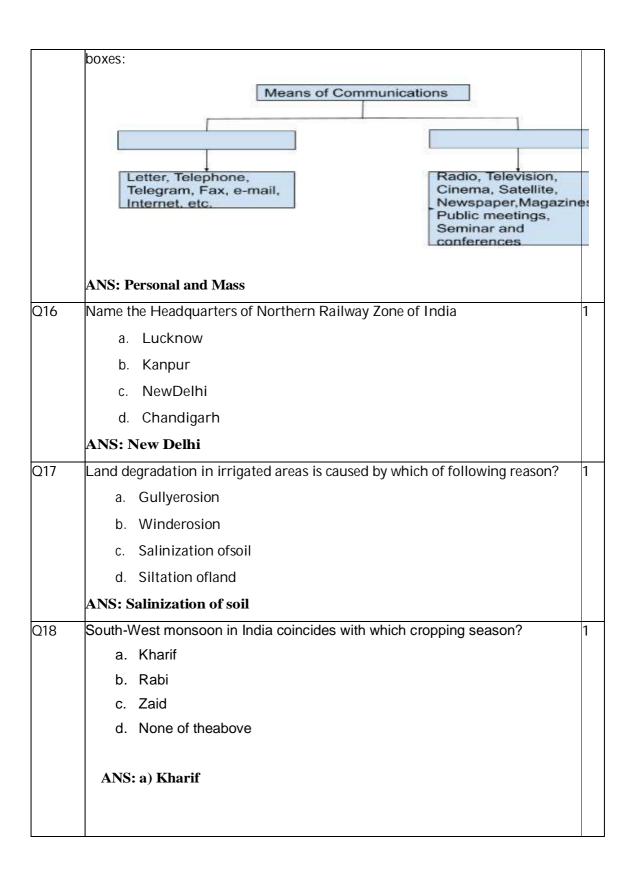
- i. There are 30 questions in all.
- ii. All questions are compulsory.
- iii. Question numbers 1 to 18 are Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) carrying 1mark each. Write only the correct answer in you answersheets.
- iv. Question numbers 19 to 22 are short answer questions carrying 3 marks each. Answer to each of these questions should not exceed 80-100words.
- v. Question numbers 23 to 28 are long answer questions carrying 5 markseach. Answer to each of these questions should not exceed 150words.
- vi. Question numbers 29 and 30 are related to identification or location and labelingof geographical features on maps, carrying 5 markseach.
- vii. Outline map of India and World are provided to you must be attached within your answer book.
- viii. Use of template or stencils for drawing outline maps is allowed.

	SECTION A	
Q1	Which one of the following is the largest linguistic group of India?	1
	a. Sino – Tibetan	
	b. Indo –Aryan	
	c. Austric	
	d. Dravidian	
	ANS: b) Indo Aryan	
	OR	
	C Which one of the following periods had witnessed rapid growth of	
	population.	
	a. Before 1921	
	b. 1921 - 1951	
	c. 1951 –1981	
	d. After 1981	
	ANS: c) 1951 - 1981	

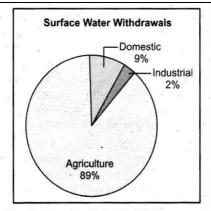
Q2	Which one of the following is the main reason for male migration in India?	1
	a. Education	
	b. Business	
	c. Work andemployment	
	d. Marriage	
	ANS: c) Work and employment.	
Q3	Identify the country with the highest sex ratio in the world	1
	a. Latvia	
	b. United ArabEmirates	
	c. Japan	
	d. France	
	ANS: Latvia	
	OR	
	Which one of the following figures represents the working age group of the	
	population?	
	a. 15 to 65 years	
	b. 15 to 64years	
	c. 15 to 66years	
	d. 15 to 59 years	
	ANS: 15 to 59 years	
Q4	Which one of the following group of cities have been arranged in the	1
	sequence of their ranks i.e., 1,2,3 and 4 in size?	
	a. Greater Mumbai, Bangaluru, Kolkata, Chennai.	
	b. Delhi, Greater Mumbai, Chennai, Kolkata.	
	c. Kolkata, Greater Mumbai, Chennai, Delhi.	
	d. Greater Mumbai, Kolkata, Delhi, Chennai.	
	ANS: d) Greater Mumbai, Kolkata, Delhi and Chennai	
	OR	
	Palli and nagla belong to which one of the following rural settlements-	
	a.Clustered	

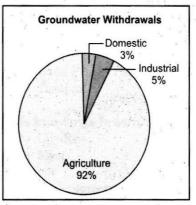
	b. Semi-clustered	
	c. Hamleted	
	d. Dispersed orisolated.	
	ANS: c) Hamleted	
Q5	Which one of the following is not a Push factor?	1
	a. Water Shortage	
	b. Medical/Educationalfacilities	
	c. Unemployment	
	d. Epidemics	
	ANS: Medical/Educational facilities	
Q6	Which one of the following best describes Development?	1
	a. An increase insize	
	b. A constant insize	
	c. A positive change inquality	
	d. A simple change inquality	
	ANS: A positive change in quality	
Q7	Which one of the following is not a Plantation Crop?	1
	a. Coffee	
	b. Sugarcane	
	c. Wheat	
	d. Rubber	
	ANS: Wheat	
Q8	ANS: Kolkhoz	1
Q9	Which one of the following does not follow Monoculture?	1
	ANS: Mixed Farming does not follow Monoculture	
	OR	
	PlantationAgriculturefollowsMonoculture	
	(Anyoneoftheaboveoptioniscorrect)	
Q10	Which one of the following forms of settlement develops along either side	1
	of roads, rivers or canals?	

	a. Circular	
	b. Linear	
	c. CrossShaped	
	d. Square	
	ANS: Linear	
Q11	Which one of the following types of economic activities dominates in all	1
	rural settlements?	
	a. Primary	
	b. Tertiary	
	c. Secondary	
	d. Quaternary	
	ANS: Primary	
Q12	The first urban settlement to reach a population of one million was:	1
	a. Paris	
	b. NewYork	
	c. London	
	d. Canberra	
	ANS: London	
Q13	Which one of the following is a land locked harbor?	1
	a. Vishakhapatnam	
	b. Mumbai	
	c. Ennor	
	d. Haldia	
	ANS: Vishakhapatnam	
Q14	Which one of the following is the longest national highway of India?	1
	a. NH-1	
	b. NH-7	
	c. NH-6	
	d. NH-8	
	ANS: NH-7	
Q15	Complete the following table by writing appropriate names in the blank	1



	SECTION B	
Q19	"The chief gateways of the world of international trade are the harbours and	3
	ports". Justify the statement with examples.	
	ANS:	
	1. Portsprovidefacilitiesofdocking,loadingandunloadingof	
	cargo.	
	2. Ports provide storage facilities forcargo	
	3. Labour and managerial services are provided at theports.	
Q20	How is Possibilism different from Environmental Determinism? Explain	3
	with suitable Examples.	
	ANS: Possibilism: Withpassageoftime, humans developed better and	
	efficienttechnology.Thisgavehimmanychoicesandpossibilitiestouse	
	resources offered by the environment. They become free to use natural	
	resourcesaccordingtotheirconvenienceandnecessities.Manhascreated	
	health resorts on highlands, huge urban sprawls, fields, orchards and	
	pasturesintheplains, portsonthecoasts and satellites in space. This was	
	termed Possibilism by earlierscholars.	
	Determinism:IntheearlierstagesofHumanevolution,Therewas no	
	technology to modify environment by man. Thus, the human beings	
	adaptedtothedictatesofthenature.Thenaturalisedhumanwasafraidof	
	natureandworshippedtheforcesofnaturesuchasfire,floods,rains,	
	etc.	
Q21	Study the pie-chart given below and answer the questions that follow-	3





Source: Earth Trend 2001, World Resource Institute, as given in Govt. of India (200 Fig.: Sectoral Usage of Surface Water Fig. Sectoral Usage of Groundwart

- 1. Which sector's share is the maximum in the usage of surface and groundwater?
- 2. What is the percentage of agricultural sector in the usage of surface water and Groundwater?
- 3. Why the development of irrigation was assigned a very high priority in the Five years plans andhow?

#### ANS:

- 1. Agricultural sector share is the maximum in the usage of surface water and ground water.
- 2. Surface water- 89% and Groundwater- 92%. India has traditionally been an agrariane conomy with two-third of its population depends on a griculture.
- 3. Multipurposerivervalleyprojectswerelaunchedtomeet the irrigational needs of the country in five years plans.

O22 'Development has direct bearings on the deteriorating human conditions'.

How poor people are more affected in this process?

ANS. Thedevelopmenthasdirectbearingonthedeterioratinghuman conditionsduetoenvironmentaldegradationandecologicalcrisis.Air, soil,waterandnoisepollutionhavethreatenedourexistence.

Consequently,thepooraresubjectedtothreeinterrelatedprocessesof declining capabilities as givenbelow-

- 1. Socialcapabilities due to displacement and weakening socialties.
- 2. Environmental capabilities due topollution.
- 3. Personal capabilities due to increasing incidence of diseases and accidents.

 $This has a dverse effects on their quality of life and human \\ development$ 

(Any other point highlighting creativity)

OR

Describe the concept of Human Development as defined by United Nations

Development Programme (UNDP)

ANS. As per the World Human Development Report, Human Development is a process of enlarging the range of people'schoices, increasing their oppurtunities for education, health care, income and empowerment and covering the full range of human choices from a sound environment to economic, social and politicalfreedom.

Thus enlarging the range of people's choices is the most significant aspect of human development. It is just opposite the western or euro-centric view of development. People should be able to live a long and healthy life. They should be educated and have access to resources needed for a decent standard of living. Thesearenecessary and non-negotiable aspects of the human development.

2

#### **SECTION C**

The challenge of sustainable development requires integration of quest for 1x5=5 economic development with environmental concerns. Comprehend the statement in relation to the development of non conventional sources of energy in India by giving suitable example.

#### ANS:

- 1. The sustainable development is important because it calls for the protection of resources for future generations.
- 2. Sustainableenergyresourcesareonlytherenewableenergyre sourceslikesolar, wind, hydro, geothermal and biomass.
- 3. These energy sources are more equitably distributed and environmental friendly.
- 4. Non-conventional energy sources will provide more sustained, eco friendly cheaper energy after the initial cost is taken care of.
- 5. Traditional methods of resource use result into generating enormous quantity of waste as well as create other environmental problems. Hence, sustainable development calls for the protection of resources for the future generation. There is a nurgent need to conserve their sources.

(Any other relevant point)

#### OR

Nuclear energy is replacing the conventional sources in India. Do you think it as a viable energy source of energy in future keeping in view the availability of nuclear minerals in India.

ANS: Nuclear energy has emerged as a viable source in recent times.Importantmineralsusedforthegenerationofnuclearenergyare UraniumandThorium.UraniumdepositsoccurinDharwarrocks.Itis foundinseverallocationsalongtheSinghbhumcopperbelt.Itisalsofound in Udaipur, Alwar and Jhunjhunu district of Rajasthan, Durg

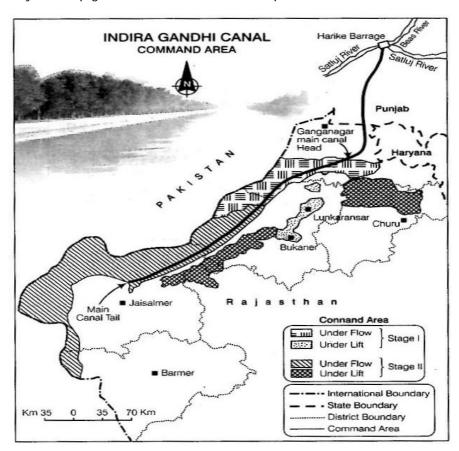
district of Chhattisgarh, Bhandara district of Maharashtra and Kullu district of Himachal Pradesh. Thorium is mainly obtained from the monazite and limonite in the beach sand along the cost of Kerala and Tamilnadu. World's richest monazite deposits occur in Palakkad and Kollam districts of Kerala, near Visakhapatnam in Andhra Pradesh and Mahanadi river delta in Odisha.

Atomic energy commission was established in 1948. The important nuclearpowerprojectsareTarapur(Maharashtra)RawatbhatanearKota (Rajasthan), Kalpakkam (Tamilnadu), Narora( Uttar Pradesh) Kaiga (Karnataka) and Kakrapara (Gujarat)

CollaborationwithFrance,Germany,RussiaandU.S.A.indevelopingthe requiredtechnologyisapositivestepinthisdirection.

(Any other relevant point )

Q24 Study the map given below and answer the questions that follows-



a. What is the difference between the two areas shown as 'Under Flow'

And 'Under Lift' system of irrigation. b. Name the districts that are benefited by the command area of the canal instage I and stage II. ANS: 1. The canal has two irrigation system such as Flow system (underflow)andliftsystem(underlift).Around70%landofthe commandarea Isirrigatedbyflowsystemandrest30%Landby lift system. All the lift channels of Indira Gandhi Canal systemoriginate at the left Bank of main can alwhile the can alsoonthe rightBankofmaincanals areFlowcanals. 2. Stage 1- Ganganagar, Hanumangarh and northern parts of Bikaner and Jaiselmerdistrict. Stage 2- Bikaner, Jaisalmer, Barmer, Jodhpur, Nagaur and Churu districts. 3+2=5Main characteristics of the area are: For Visually Impaired Candidates only a) i- The availability of soil moisture for a longer period of time and various afforestation and pasture development programs under CAD have resulted in greening theland. ii- It has also helped in reducing wind erosion and siltation of canal. iii- Canal irrigation has brought a perceptible transformation in the agricultural economy of the region because it has led to increase in cultivated areas and intensity of cropping. The traditional crops gram, bajra and jowar – have been replaced by wheat, cotton, groundnut and rice. b) Ganganagar, Bikaner, Jaiselmer, Barmer, Churu, Lunkaransar (Any four) 025 How are industries classified on the basis of the raw material used? ANS: 1. Agro-based industries: These industries process the raw material

- From the agricultural field into finished products to be consumed in the market. Major agrobased industries are food processing, sugar, fruit juices, etc.
- 2. Mineral based industries: These industries use minerals such as iron, copper, cement as rawmaterial.
- 3. Chemicalbasedindustries: These industries use natural chemical minerals such as Petroleum, salts, sulphur, etc.
- 4. Forest based industries: These industries use material provided by the forest such as, timber for furniture industry, wood, grass, bamboo for paper industry, etc.
- 5. Animal based industries: Raw material in these industries is obtained from animals. For example, wool for woollen textiles, ivory from elephant tusks and leather from animalhide.

#### OR

Explain why high-tech industries in many countries are being attracted to the peripheral areas of major metropolitan centres?

- 1. Landisgenerallycheapintheperipheralareasofthecitiesandis availableinabundance. Singlestory buildings can be built.
- 2. Theperipheralareascanbewellconnected with roadway and railway network used by high-tech industries.
- ${\bf 3.} \quad Cheap and skilled labour is easily available from the near by areas.$
- 4. Highlyskilledspecialistsandprofessionalsareavailableinmajorme tropolitancentres.
- Thefeaturesofhightechindustris allandscapeareneatlyspaced, low,modern,dispersedofficeplantlabbuildingsforwhichtheperipheral areas of the cities are most suited.
- "Modern economic development in the world is mainly the result of the development of Quaternary services." Explain the statement with suitable examples."

ANS: Following are the points which explain the statement:

- $a. \label{lem:conomicactivities} and has resulted in an ewgroup of activities, like the Quaternary activities.$
- b. The Quaternary activities are related to knowledge and education, information, research and development.
- ${\bf c.} \quad {\bf The people of the Quaternary activities are innovative and} \\ {\bf contribute to the research and development.}$
- d. OnlyafewpeopleareengagedinQuaternaryactivitiesin economically developedcountries.
- e. It is characterized by the highest income and higher degreeof mobility in the process of career development.

Q27 What are the modes by which cyber space will expand the contemporary 5 economic and social space of humans?

ANS: Cyber Space is very important in today's life. It enables us to communicate or access any information without physical movement of thesenderandthereceiver. It has brought the world closer to each other. One cannow communicate with any person in any part of the world. It can be used in an office, sailing boat, flying plane and virtually everywhere. Cyberspace has expanded the contemporary economicands ocial space of humans through he-mail, e-commerce, e-learning and e-governance. It will be accessible to more and more people cutting across space and time under these circumstances. These modern communication systems have made the concept of 'Global Village' are ality.

OR

Which are the major regions of the world having a dense network of airways?

ANS: Dense network of airways exists in Eastern USA, Western Europe and South East Asia. USA alone accounts for 60% of the world airways. New York, London, Paris, Amsterdam, Frankfurt, Rome, Moscow,

Karachi, New Delhi, Mumbai, Bangkok, Singapore, Tokyo, San Francisco, Los Angeles and Chicago are the nodal points where air route coverage is maximum.

Q28 Land degradation caused by human made processes are more harmful than natural processes in India. Analyse the statement with suitable examples.

Ans.LandDegradationisgenerallyunderstoodeitherasatemporaryfor apermanentdeclineinproductivecapacityoftheland. Thecauses or factor responsible for land degradation in India are given below:

- 1. Soilerosion.
- 2. Waterlogging
- 3. Salinisation
- 4. Alkalinisation ofland

Landisconstantlyusedwithoutmanagingitsfertility,itisdegradedand its productivity decline. Deforestation, overgrazing, mining and quarrying too are responsible for land degradation in India. Land Degradationcausedbyhumanprocessesaremoreharmfulthannatural processes in India. Man-made degraded wasteland such as degraded shiftingcultivationarea,degradedlandunderplantationcrops,degraded forest, mining and industrial waste land are 5.8 % of the total geographical area. In states like Jharkhand, Chhattisgarh, Madhya PradeshandOdishadeforestationduetomininghavecausedsevereLand Degradation. In states like Gujarat, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh, and Maharashtra overgrazing is one of the main reasons for the land degradation

OR

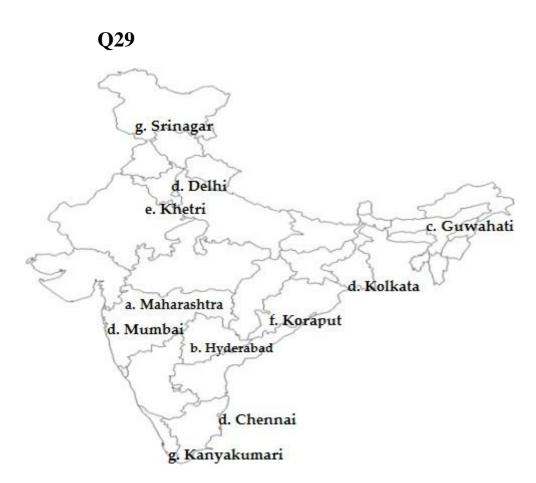
How has Noise pollution become hazardous in many big cities of India? Explain giving suitableexamples.

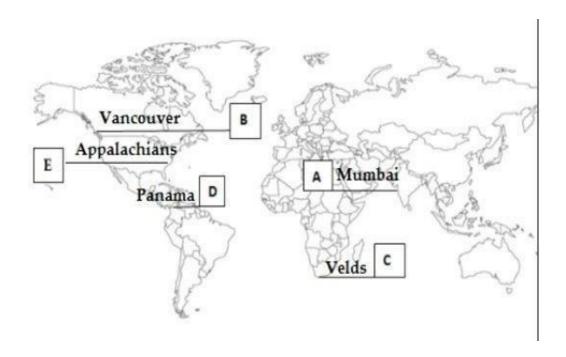
Ans. Noise pollution has become hazardous in many big cities of India like Delhi , Mumbai due to following factors-

1. With the increase in population, the volume of traffic and passenger has increased. This has led to more noise

		pollution.			
	2	More people have become prosperous in the cities. As a			
		resultofthis, number of private vehicles such as cars have			
		increasedsignificantly. This has sled totrafficjamsduring			
		peak hours, i.e. in the morning and in the evening when			
		people go and come from office. This has increased noise			
		pollution on theroads.			
	3.	Rapid industrialisation in and around the residential			
	3.	Colony has also increased noise pollution. Small and			
		cottageindustriesaresetupintheareasnearthemarket.			
	4.	The construction activities have increased to accommodate			
	7.	the ever increasing population in the big cities. These			
		activities become hazardous astoomuch noise is created by			
		them.			
	5	Religious activities, social functions, rallies, etc. create			
	3.	noise pollution particularly in the late hours of the day.			
Q29	On the outline	map of India mark and indicate the following features (any	1x5=5		
		map of india mark and indicate the following leatures (any	133=3		
	five)- a.	State having highest urbanpopulation			
	b.	Software technology park of Telangana			
	C.	International airport located in Assam			
	d.	Eastern terminal point of Goldenquadrilateral			
	e.	Copper mine located inRajasthan			
	f.	Bauxite mines inOdisha			
	g.	Southern terminal of North-Southcorridor.			
Q30	On the given p	olitical map of the world, following five features are shown.	1x5=5		
	Identify these features with the help of the given key and write them on the				
	blanks marked <b>A</b> , <b>B</b> , <b>C</b> , <b>D</b> and <b>E</b>				
	A. A Megacity				
	B. A majorsea-port				
		- · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			

- C. Grasslands of Africa with extensive commercial grainfarming
- **D.** An important ShippingCanal
- E. Industrial region of theUS.





# **SECTION-4**

# GIST OF THE CHAPTERS

**BOOK -I (Fundamentals of Human Geography)** 

# CHAPTER -1 **HUMAN GEOGRAPHY NATURE AND SCOPE**

#### **GIST OF THE LESSON:**

Geography is a field - study, an integrative, empirical, scientific and practical discipline, it studies each and every event on the surface of the earth over the time and space, human geography studies the relationship between human and nature.

Geography can be studied through law making or descriptive. There are two approaches used in the study of geography – 1. Systematic approach 2. Regional Approach

#### **DEFINITION OF HUMAN GEOGRAPHY**

"Human geography is the synthetic study of relationship between human societies & earth s surface". -Ratzel

Synthesis has been emphasized in the above definition.

"Human geography is the study of "the changing relationship between the un-resting man and the unstable earth." - Ellen C. Semple

Dynamism in the relationship is the keyword in SempleS definition.

"Conception resulting from a more synthetic knowledge of the physical laws governing our earth and of the relations between the living beings which inhabit it". - **Paul Vidal de la Blache** 

#### NATURE OF HUMAN GEOGRAPHY

Human geography studies the inter relationship between the physical environment and sociocultural environment created by man. Elements of physical are land, water, soil, climate, flora & fauna etc. Elements of cultural are transport and communication, settlements, crops etc.

# NATURALISATION OF HUMANS (ENVIRONMENTAL DETERMINISM)

Man interacts with nature with the help of technology. It is not important that what he creates but with what tools he used to create. Technology indicates the level of cultural development of society. Understanding the nature helps to create technology. Understanding of friction and heat helped to discover fire. Understanding DNA helped to eradicate diseases. Laws of

thermodynamics helped to develop fast planes. Knowledge about nature is extremely important to develop technology and technology loosens the shackles of environment on human being.

The interaction between primitive society and strong forces of nature is called "Environmental Determinism".

# EMINENT SCHOLARS OF THE DETERMINICTIC SCHOOL - F. Raitzel (Germany)

Ellen C. Semple (U.S.A.)

#### **HUMANISATION OF NATURE (POSSIBILISM)**

With the development of technology people understood the nature well. <u>They move from state of necessity to state of possibilities</u>. Human activities created cultural landscapes, so it is called as **possibilism**.

**EMINENT SCHOLAR OF THE POSSIBILISTIC SCHOOL-** Paul Vidal de la Blache (France)

# NEO-DETERMINISM /STOP AND GO DETERMINISM (SCIENTIFIC DETERMINISM)

- 1. Introduced by Griffith Taylor in 1920, an Australian Scholar.
- 2. It is a middle path (MADHYAM MARG) between environmental determinism and possibilism. The concept shows that neither is there a situation of absolute necessity nor is there a condition of absolute freedom. Sustainable development is the main aim. The Neo determinism maintains balance between development and nature.
- 3. Example of Nature as a traffic controller and Man as a travellar incorporated in his concept.

# HUMAN GEOGRAPHY THROUGH THE CORRIDORS OF TIME VARIOUS SCHOOLS OF HUMAN GEOGRAPHY

#### > WELFARE SCHOOL

Concerned with social well-being of the people a. housing b. Health c. Education

# > RADICAL SCHOOL

Concerned with causes of poverty, deprivation and social and gender inequality

#### > BEHAVIOURAL SCHOOL

Given importance to lived experience, perception of space by Social categories

#### STAGES THROUGH CORRIDORS OF TIME

PERIOD	APPROACHES	BROAD FEATURES
EARLY COLONIAL PERIOD	Exploration & description	Imperialism and trade lead to discover many lands
COLONIAL PERIOD	Regional analysis	Understanding of parts In totality would lead to understand the whole
1930- INTERWAR PERIOD	Aerial differentiation	Find the reasons for the uniqueness of a region
LATE 1950- 1960	Spatial organization	Apply technology to study geography
1970	Emergence of humanistic, radical and behavioral school	Emergence of sociopolitical reality with the help of schools
1990	Post modernism	Generalization and apply of universal laws to understand geography

# **Three Marks Questions**

- 1. What is Naturalization of Humans?
- Ans. 1. Human activities are controlled and governed by Environment.
  - 1. Man is treated as a passive agent.
  - 2. Human adjustment in the environment with the help of available technology.
  - 3. Example of Benda life in Abujhamaad area of central India.
- 2. What is humanization of Nature?
- Ans. 1. Man is treated as an independent and active agent.
  - 2. Everywhere there are possibilities and man is the master of these possibilities.
  - 3. Man can transform nature by culture and technological knowledge.

- 4. Example of Cari residing in Trondheim (Norway).
- 3. Distinguish between regional approach and systematic approach of Geography.

Ans-Systematic Approach

Regional Approach

- 1. Based on political units
- 1. Based on geographical units
- 2. Single element is taken for studies Such as climate
- 2. Based on similarities

# **Five Marks Question**

- 1. Mention three Characteristics of Neo –Determinism.
- Ans. 1. Introduced by Griffith Taylor
  - 2. Reflects the middle path between the ideas of Environmental determinism and possibilism.
  - 3. Emphasizes in solving the problems without damaging the environment.
  - 4. It believes in the concept of stop and Go Determinism.
  - 5. Sense of Sustainble development.

# CHAPTER - 2 THE WORLD POPULATION; DISTRIBUTION, DENSITY AND GROWTH

#### GIST OF THE LESSON:

General patterns of population distribution in the world, density of population, factors influencing the distribution of population, population growth, trends in population growth, doubling time of world population spatial pattern of population change, impact of population change, demographic transition, population control measures.

#### **GENERAL:**

- People are real wealth of the country
- Country is known by its people
- Population of the world is uneven

"Asia has many people where people are few and few places where people are very many" **George B. Cressey** 

#### PATTERNS OF POPULATION DISTRIBUTION

- Pop. Distribution refers to "the way the people are spaced over the earth surface"
- 90 % of people are living in 10% of its land
- 10 most populas countries (CHINA, INDIA, USA, INDONESIA, BRAZIL, PAKISTAN RUSSIA, BANGLADESH, MEXICO& NIGERIA) contribute 60% of population.

#### DENSITYOF POPULATION - RATIO BETWEEN LAND AND PEOPLE

Measured in persons per sq. km Density =  $\frac{\text{Total population}}{\text{Total Area (km sq)}}$ 

HIGH DENSITY AREAS: (more than 200persons/sq km) NE USA, NW EUROPE, S, SE, & E ASIA

LOW DENSITY AREAS (less the 1 person / sq km) HOT AND COLD DESERTS, LOW LATITUDE AREAS

MEDIUM DENSITY: (11-50 persons /sq.km) OTHER THAN ABOVE TWO AREAS

#### FACTORS INFLUENCING THE DISTRIBUTION OF POPULATION

#### A- GEOGRPHICAL FACTORS

- Availability of water,
- Land forms,
- Climate.
- Soils

# **B- ECONOMIC FACTORS**

- Minerals,
- Urbanization,
- Industrialization

# C- SOCIAL AND CULTURAL FACTORS

- Religious factors,
- Social and political unrest,
- Border terrorism,
- Govt. policies

# POPULATION GROWTH

- Change in number of persons of a place during a specific point of time, it may be positive or negative
- ➤ It may be represented in absolute numbers /percentage
- > Change in population is an indicator of Economic Development.

#### **BASIC CONCEPTS ARE:**

- Growth of population,
- Growth rate of population,
- Natural growth of population
- Actual Growth of population
- +ve growth of population
- -ve growth of population.

# COMPONENTS OF POPULATION CHANGE

- 1. Birth rate,
- 2. Death Rate,
- 3. Migration

CRUDE BIRTH RATE: Number of live births in a year per thousand of population

$$CBR = \frac{Bi}{M} \times 1000$$

P

 $CBR = CRUDE BIRTH RATE$ 

Bi: LIVE BIRTHS,  $P = MID YEAR POPULATION$ 

CDR=number of death in aparticularyear perthousand population.

P

CDR= CRUDE DEATH RATE

D= NO. OF DEATHS, P= ESTIMATED MID YEAR POPULATION

# **MIGRATION**

It is the spontaneous effort to achieve a better balance between population and resources. It may be permanent, temporary/seasonal, it may be rural-rural, rural-urban, urban-urban, urban-rural



# FACTORS RESPOSIBLE FOR MIGRATION

# **PUSH FACTORS:**

- Unemployment,
- Poor living ,
- Political turmoil,
- Unpleasant climate,
- Natural disasters,
- Epidemics, and
- Socio- economics backwardness

# **PULL FACTORS:**

- More attractive jobs,
- Good living conditions,
- Peace,
- Stability,
- Security of life,
- Pleasant climate

#### TRENDS IN POPULATION GROWTH:

Population growth is due to

- > Agricultural development,
- > Industrial revolution,
- > Transportation,
- > Sanitation and Medical facilities,
- Biotechnology,
- > Information and computers technological revolution.
- Discovery of machines,
- Medicines

Population Increased 10 times during last 500 years, 4 times in 20<sup>th</sup> century, 80 million people are added each year.

#### DOUBLING TIME OF WORLD POPULATION

- More than one million to become one billion population
- It took 12 years to become from 5 billion to 6 billion
- Developed countries take more time than developing countries
- Liberia highest growth rate: 8.2% Latvia & Lithuania lowest growth rate: -1.08 %

# SPATIAL PATTERN OF POPULATION CHANGE

When it is small change applied to large population it is large, growth rate declines but pop still increase.

#### IMPACT OF HIGH GROWTH OF POPULATION

- Depletion of resources
- Spread of epidemics
- Reduced life expectancy
- Increase in social crime rate
- Health problems
- Lack of civic amenilies

# **DEMOGRAPHIC TRANSITION**

- Predict the future population of any area
- Any region changes from high BR & DR to low BR & DR
- progress from rural to urban
- Illiterate to literate

# These are collectively known as demographic cycle

# **STAGE-I**

- High fertility,
- High mortality,
- Low growth,
- More epidemics,
- Variable food supply,
- Agriculture is occupation,
- Low life expectancy,
- Illiteracy,
- Low level of technology -
- Exam- Rain forest tribes, Bangladesh

# **STAGE-II**

- Fertility remains high, but decline with time,
- Reduced mortality,
- Improved sanitation,
- Medical facilities
- High growth rate
- Ex. Peru, Sri Lanka, Kenya

#### **STAGE -III**

- Low birth rate and
- Death rate
- Slow growth
- Stable growth rate
- Exam bobe added

# CHARACTERSTICS OF URBAN POPULATION

- High technology
- Small families.
- Flexible families ex. Canada japan USA
- Population control measures:
- Limiting the population growth,
- Improving womens health.

#### PUPULATION CONTROL MEASURES

- Family planning.
- Free availability of contraceptives,
- Tax disincentives for large families,
- Government incentives for small families.

# **MALTHUSIAN THEORY**

Thomas Malthus in his theory (1798) stated that the number of people would increase faster than the food supply. Any further increase would result in a population crash caused by famine, disease and war.

#### **Three Marks Question.**

- Q1. What are the three stages of Demographic Transition?
- Ans. To predict the future population of an area, demographic transition theory can be used. This theory explains 3 staged model of demographic transition:
  - Stage (i) High birth rate, high death rate, low growth rate: Example Bangladesh.
  - Stage (ii) Initially high birth rate, low death rate, high growth rate-example India
  - Stage (iii) Low birth rate, low death rate, stable or low growth rate –example Japan
- Q.2. Classify the world into various regions on the basis of population density.
- Ans 1. Areas of high Density
  - (i) Monsoon Asia, South and South east Asia
  - (ii) Europe river valley's, coastal plains–(N.W Europe)
  - (iii) Eastern coastal region of North America
  - 2. Areas of Medium Density:
    - (i) Asia
    - (ii) Europe
    - (iii) USA, Australia
    - (iv) Africa, South America
  - 3. Areas of low Density:
    - (i) Hot Deserts

- (ii) Areas around North & South poles
- (iii) Cold Deserts
- (iv) Equatorial Region

# **Five marks Questions**

Q1. What is density of population? Explain with examples four geographical factors influencing the distribution of population in the World.

Ans: Density of population = population /Area

Geographical factors

- (i) Availability of water
- (ii) Landforms
- (iii) Climate
- (iv) Soil

# CHAPTER - 3 UNIT -2 POPULATION COMPOSITION

#### GIST OF THE LESSON:

#### PEOPLE ARE DIFFERENT IN DIFFERENT WAYS

- ♣ Age.
- Sex.
- Place of residence,
- Occupation,
- **&** Education,
- Life expectancy

#### SEX COMPOSITION

The ratio between number of women and men is called sex ratio.

Sex ratio = FEMALE POPULATION X 1000

MALE POPULATION

#### CAUSES FOR UNFAVORABLE SEX-RATIO IN THE COUNTRY

- Low socio-economic status
- Female foeticide
- Female infanticide,
- Domestic violence against women
- Discrimination between male & female child
- Social customs.

### NATURAL ADVANTAGES vs SOCIAL DISADVANTAGE OF WOMEN

They are more resilient, more resistant power, more patience.

- Sex ratio of the world is: 102 males per 100 females
- ❖ Latvia has highest 85 males per 100 females &UAE has lowest 311 males per 100 females.
- ❖ It is favorable in 139 countries
- Unfavorable in 72 countries
- ❖ Asia has low sex ratio & Europe has highest
- Europe has better status of women
- ❖ Male dominated out migration in Europe

#### **AGE STRUCTURE**

- No. of people in different age groups.
- ➤ It is an important indicator of population Composition
- A large group of population is in age group of 15-59 years (Active or working Poupulation.)
- Above 60 years population is called aging population, More expenditure on medical facilities

#### **AGE-SEX PYRAMID**

- Number of females and males in different age groups
- Population Pyramid is used to show age sex structure
- ➤ Left side male and right-side female

#### TYPES OF AGE SEX PYRAMID

#### I-EXPANDING POPULATION

- 1. Triangular shape,
- 2. Less developed/Developing countries,
- 3. Young population is more/ High birth rates.
- 4. Broad base
- 5. Example-Bangladesh, Mexico, Nigeria

# **II-CONSTANT POPULATION**

- 1. A bell shaped & tapered top
- 2. Birth and death rates are almost equal
- 3. Example- Australia

# **III-DECLINING POPULATION**

- 1. Narrow base & tapered top
- 2. Low birth and death,
- 3. Shows developed countries,
- 4. Growth is negative or zero
- 5. Example- Japan

#### **RURAL - URBAN COMPOSITION**

- > It is based on residence
- > They differ from each other
- The criteria for rural and urban varies from country to country
- Rural population mostly engaged in primary activities whereas urban other than primary activities
- Rural and urban composition of west European countries is different from African countries
- In west European countries males are more in rural areas and females are more in urban areas in Asian countries female is more in rural areas
- In Asian countries female is less in urban areas due to shortage of housing, high cost of living, paucity of jobs, lack of security in cities

#### **LITERACY**

- Literacy indicated the socio-economic development
- > Standard of living
- > Social status of women
- ➤ Availability of facilities
- Policies of government
- In India literate means: population above 7 years age who is able to read write and have the ability to do arithmetic calculations with understanding.

# OCCUPATIONAL STRUCTURE

The working population takes part in various occupations such as primary, secondary, tertiary, and quaternary activities. Each category refers to the level of economic development of the country. Developed countries only show the job opportunities more in secondary as well as in service sector while developing countries show more people engaged under primary activates.

# Three marks questions.

Q1. State the factors which discourage women to migrate from rural to urban areasin India.

Ans. High female participation in farming activities in rural areas.

- Shortage of housing
- High cost of living in urban areas.

- Paucity of job opportunities.
- Lack of security in urban areas.
- Social constraints.
- Q2. List the factors influencing the literacy ratio.
- Ans. (1) Level of economic development
  - (2) Urbanization
  - (3) Status of woman in society.
  - (4) Availability of education facilities.
  - (5) Govt policies.

# Five marks question.

- Q1. What is Sex ratio? Why is Sex-ratio unfavorable to women in some countries of the world? Explain any four reasons.
- Ans. Sex Ration = Female population /Male population X1000

Sex ratio – unfavourable to women – reasons are:

- (i) Practice of female foeticide.
- (ii) Female infanticide.
- (iii) Domestic violence against women.
- (iv) Lower Socio economic status of women.
- (v) Discrimination between male & female child.

# CHAPTER - 4 HUMAN DEVELOPMENT

#### GIST OF THE LESSON:

GROWTH: It is the quantitative and value neutral, it may be positive, or negative.

DEVELOPMENT: Qualitative change which is always value positive.

#### CONCEPT OF HUMAN DEVELOPMENT

The concept of human development was introduced by DR. Mahbub-ul- Haq. Human development is a process of enlarging people choices and raising the level of their wellbeing.

People can live meaningful life. Life with some purpose, people must be healthy, develop their talents, participate in society and be free to achieve their goal.

# THE FOUR PILLARS OF HUMAN DEVELOPMENT

- EQUITY: equal opportunities available to everybody.
   Irrespective of gender, race, income (in case of India women and low caste people drop out the school is more)
- > SUSTAINABILITY: continuity in availability of resources, each generation must have opportunities,
- ➤ PRODUCTIVITY: productivity in terms of labor productivity, it should be constantly enriched.
- EMPOWERMENT: to have power to make decisions. Increasing freedom and capability, good governance, and govt. policies.

#### APPROACHES TO HUMANDEVELOPMENT

- ➤ INCOME APPROACH: oldest method, level of income leads to development
- ➤ WELFARE APPROACH: higher the expenditure on education, health, and other amenities by the government.
- > BASIC NEEDS APPROACH: it was introduced by ILO
- > SIX BASICNEEDS
  - Health
  - Education
  - Food
  - Water Supply
  - Sanitation
  - Housing

➤ CAPABILITY APPROACH: associated with Prof. Amartya Sen. Access to education and health facilities.

# INTERNATIONAL COMPARISIONS

Size of the country and per-capita income are not directly related to human development. Like Sri Lanka and Trinidad and Tobago have higher rank than India in human development.

#### THERE ARE FOUR GROUPS OF HDI

GROUPS OF HDI	HDI SCORE RANGE	COUNTRIES (HDR 2018)
VERY HIGH	ABOVE 0.8	59
HIGH	0.701-0.799	53
MEDIUM	0.550-0.700	39
LOW	BELOW 0.549	38

# Three Marks Question.

Q1. Name four countries having high human development index. Discuss three reasons for high human development index.

Ans. Four counties with high human development index:

- 1. Norway
- 2. Australia
- 3. Netherlands
- 4. U.S.A

Reason for high HDI

- Investment more in the Social Sector (education, health care)
- Good governance
- Free from political turmoil and instability.
- Q2. Name any four countries having low human development index. Discuss three reason for low human development index.
- Ans. (1) Democratic Republic of Congo
  - (2) Nigeria
  - (3) Burundi

#### (4) Mozambique

#### Reasons for low HDI

- Political turmoil
- Social instability (civil war)
- Famine
- High incidence of diseases.
- Q3. Discuss in detail about the alternative view of development given by Dr. Mahbub –ul haq and Prof. Amartya Sen.
- Ans. For many decades a country's level of development was measured only in terms of its economic growth.

The ideas that the quality of life people enjoy in a country, the opportunities they have and freedoms they enjoy are important aspects of development now and the works of Mahbub-ul-Haq and Amartya Sen are important in this regard.

- According to Haq-development in all about enlarging people's choices in order to lead long, healthy lives with dignity. The basic goal of development is to create conditions where people can live meaningful lives.
- Prof.Amartya Sen saw an increase in freedom or decrease in unfreedom as the main objective of dvelopment.
- The works of these economist are path breaking and have succeeded in bringing people to the centre of any discussion on development.

# **Five Marks Question**

- Q1. Define human development. What is the basic goal of human development? Explain with examples the four pillars of human development.
- Ans. Human development is a process of enlarging the range of people's choices, increasing their opportunities for education, health care, income and empowerment and covering the full range of human choices from a sound physical environment to economic, social and political freedom.

The basic goal of development is to create conditions where people can live meaningful lives.

The four pillars of human development: -

• Equity –It refers to providing equal access to opportunities available to everybody irrespective of their gender, race, income and caste.

- Sustainability-sustainability means continuity in the availability of opportunities for sustainable human development.
- Productivity-It refers to human labour productivity in terms of human work. It must be constantly enriched by building capabilities in people.
- Empowerment –It means to have the power to make choices. Such power comes from increasing freedom and capabilities, good governance and people –oriented policies, so as to empower people.

# CHAPTER - 5 PRIMARY ACTIVITIES

#### GIST OF THE LESSON:

#### HUNITING AND GATHERING

Depend on their immediate environment. Depend on animals they hunted and edible plants which they gathered, Primitive societies depend on hunting and gathering, fishing. Oldest occupation, practiced in harsh climatic conditions depend on animals, for food, shelter, clothing small capital, low level of technology.

Practiced in High latitude areas such as Eurasia, Southern Chile. Low latitude such as Amazon, Congo, S.E. Asian countries.

In modern market some gathering is done such as leaves, bark nuts, fabric rubber, balata, gums and resins.

#### **PASTORALISM**

#### **NOMEDIC HERDING:**

- Herders depend on animals for food, transport, and shelter and clothing.
- Keep on moving from one place to another along with their animals.
- Each nomadic community occupies a well identified territory
- Variety of animals are kept indifferent regions
- Sahara & Asiatic deserts: sheep, goat, & camel
- Tibet: yak, Andes: llamas,
- arctic region: Reindeer REGIONS:
- 1 Core regions extending from Atlantic coast of N. Africa through Arabian Peninsula to Central China
- 2. Second region extends in Tundra region of Eurasia
- 3. Third region is found in S.W Africa and Madagascar

Transhumance: Seasonal movement of people along with their herds to mountains in summer and to plains in winter. Ex. Gujjars, Bakarwals, Gaddis&Bhotias in Himalayas

The number of pastoral nomads is decreasing due to

Imposition of political boundaries

New settlement plans by different countries

#### COMMERCIAL LIVE STOCK REARING

- 1. It is more organized
- 2. Capital intensive
- 3. Practiced in permanent ranches
- 4. larger areas and divided in to parcels
- 5. Animals are moved from one parcel to another
- 6. Number of animals are kept based on capacity of the pasture
- 7. Animals are sheep, cattle, goats and horses and products are meat, wool, hides and skin
- 8. Practiced in New Zealand, Australia Argentina Uruguay and USA

#### **AGRICULTURE**

#### TYPES OF AGRICULTURE

**SUBSISTENCE AGRICULTURE** a. primitive subsistence agriculture b. intensive subsistence agriculture

Primitive subsistence agriculture:

- 1. Also called shifting cultivation/ slash and burn agriculture
- 2. practicved by tribes in tropics
- 3 Land holdings are small
- 4. Do not use fertilizers
- 5. Change the land frequently
- 6. Conventional tools used.
- 7. It is called JHUMING in N.E. INDIA, MILPA in South America, and LADANG in Malaysia

# INTENSIVE SUBSISTENCE AGRICULTURE:

- 1. Found in densely populated areas
- 2. There are two types
- A. INTENSIVE SUBSISTENCE AGRICULTURE DOMINATED BY WET PADDY CULTIVATION
- dominated by rice crop
- land holdings are very small
- family labor is used

- less use of machine
- manual labor is used
- Farm yard manure is used
- Yield per unit is high but per capita is low
- B. INTENSIVE SUBSISTENCE AGRICULTURE DOMINATED BY OTHER CROPS.

Depend on climate, soil& relief other crops are also cultivated.

Mainly practiced in SE ASIA.

C. Wheat, barley, soya bean, sorghum are cultivated in India wheat is grown in western parts of Ganga plain millets are grown in western parts of south India irrigation is used Europeans introduced Plantation agriculture

# PLANTATION AGRICULTURE

- Introduced by Europeans found in tropics
- Important crops are tea, coffee, cocoa, rubber, cotton, oil palm, sugarcane, banana, & pine apples
- Large estates, capital, managerial, technical support
- Scientific methods of cultivation
- Single crop specialization,
- Cheap labour
- Good system of transport
- Export oriented
  - (a) The French established cocoa and coffee in west Africa (b)The British set up tea gardens In India and Sri Lanka
  - (b) Rubber plantation in Malaysia, sugarcane and banana in West Indies
  - (c) Spanish and Americans introduced coconut and sugar cane in Philippines
  - (d) Dutch started sugarcane in Indonesia
  - (e) Coffee Fazandas are managed by British in Brazil.

#### EXTENSIVE COMMERCIAL GRAIN CULTIVATION

- Practiced in semiarid land of mid latitudes
- Wheat is the main crop
- Corn, barley oats and rye are grown
- Large land holdings

- Machines are used
- Low yield per acre but high yield per person
- Practiced in prairies, pampas, veldts, down& in Canterbury plains.

#### **DAIRY FARMING**

- Most advanced and efficient type of animal rearing
- Highly capital intensive
- Animal shed, storage facilities, mulching machines are used
- Special emphasis is laid on breeding& health care
- Highly labour intensive
- No off season
- Practiced in nearby urban areas and industries
- Development of transportation, refrigeration pasteurization have increased the marketing

#### MEDITERRANEAN AGRICULTURE

Highly specialized commercial agriculture

Practiced in the countries around Mediterranean Sea also central Chile, SW Africa, SW Australia& California

- It is an important supplier of citrus fruits
- VITICULTURE is specialized in this region
- Best quality wine is produced from grapes
- Low quality grapes are used for raisins, and currants
- Olives and figs are also grown
- Fruits and vegetable are grown in winter which are great demand in Europe

# MARKET GARDENING AND HORTICULTURE

- Vegetable, fruits and flowers are grown
- Small farms, located nearby urban areas
- Good transportation is required
- Labor and capital intensive
- Use of irrigation, HYV seeds, fertilizers & pesticides are used
- Green houses and artificial heating is used in cold regions
- Practiced in NW Europe, NE USA & Mediterranean regions
- Netherlands is famous in growing tulips flower
- The regionswhere vegetables are grown is called TRUCK FARMING

#### **FACTORY FARMING**

- Factory farming is also practiced in NW Europ
- It consists of poultry farming livestock rearing
- They are fed on factory fodder stuff and carefully supervised against diseases
- Heavy capital investments
- Veterinary services, heating and lightning is provided
- Breed selection and scientific breeding is important feature

#### COOPERATIVE FARMING

- A group of farmers form a society
- Pool their resources to get more profit
- Individual farms remain intact
- Farming is a matter of cooperative initiative
- Societies help farmers in getting agriculture inputs
- Sell the products at the most favorable terms
- Help in processing products at cheaper rates
- Practiced in Denmark, Netherlands, Belgium, Sweden & Italy

#### **COLLECTIVE FARMING**

- Social owner ship for means of production and labour
- It is also called as KOLKHOZ
- It was introduced in erstwhile USSR
- Farmers pool their resources like land livestock labour
- A small land is allowed to retain of their own to grow their own crops
- Yearly targets are fixed by the government
- Government fixes the product rates
- Excess produce is distributed among the farmers
- The farmers are to pay taxes for their own land
- Members are paid according to their nature of the work
- Exceptional work is rewarded by the government

# **MINING**

- There are stages of minerals copper age, bronze age, iron age
- Actual development is started with the industrialization

# FACTORS AFFECTING MINING ACTIVITY

Physical factors such as size, grade, and mode of occurrence of mineral

Economic factors such as demand for mineral, technology available, capital, labor, and transportation

#### METHODS OF MINING

Depend on mode of occurrence of mineral there are two types of mining

#### 1. SURFACE /OPENCAST MINING

- Easiest, and cheapest mining
- Occur close to the surface
- Low safety precautions
- Large and quick output

#### 2. UNDERGROUND/SHAFT MINING

- Vertical shafts to be made
- Minerals are extracted and sent to surface
- ❖ It requires specialized drills, lifts, haulage vehicles, ventilation systems
- ❖ This method is risky poisonous gases, fires, floods and caving leads to accidents
- It requires large investment
- ❖ Developed countries are showing less interest but developing countries are more interest due to large labor availability.

# **Three Marks Question**

- Q1. What is Truck farming? Mention any two features of truck farming.
- Ans . 1. This type of farming is practiced in the peripheral areas of Metropolitan cities where, vegetables and milk are brought daily to the cities by trucks by traveling overnight.
  - 2. Farmers are engaged in growing of vegetables, fruits and flowers etc.
  - 3. They use HYV seeds, Chemicals and fertilizers.
  - 4. This farming requires a well-developed network of roads connected with fields.
- Q2. Why Mediterranean agriculture is considered as one of the best and profitable type of agriculture?
- Ans. 1. Mediterranean agriculture is highly specialized commercial agriculture.
  - 2. Viticulture agriculture is highly specialized of the Mediterranean region.
  - 3. Best quality wines in the world with distinctive flavours are produced from high quality grapes. Inferior grapes are dried into raisins and currants.
  - 4. Olives and figs are produced in this region.

5. The advantage of Mediterranean agriculture is that more valuable crops such as fruits and vegetables are grown in winters when there is great demand in European and north American Markets.

Q3. Distinguish between pastoral nomadism and commercial livestock rearing.

Pastoral Nomadism Commercial livestock rearing

1. Depends on Nature Permanent ranches.

2. Lowlevel of herding Advanced technology

3. Subsistence economy Commercial economy

4. Ex-Tribals of eastern New Zealand and all the

temperate

Africa, Tundra etc. Grasslands

# **Five Marks Question**

Q5. What is the meaning of market gardening and horticulture? Describe any four characteristics of this type of agriculture of the world.

Ans. Market gardening and horticulture specialize in the cultivation of high value crops such as vegetables fruits and flower solely for the urban markets.

#### **Characteristics**

Farms are small

Labour and Capital intensive

Farms are located where there are good transportation links with the urban centre

Lays emphasis on the use of irrigation, HYV seeds, fertilizers, insecticides, green houses and artificial heating in colder regions.

# CHAPTER - 6 SECONDARY ACTIVITIES

# GIST OF THE LESSON:

MANUFACATURING, CHARACTERISTICS OF MODERN LARGE SCALE MANUFACTURING, CLASSIFICATION OF INDUSTRIES

#### **GENERAL:**

- 1. Secondary activities add value to natural resources by transforming raw materials into valuable products
- 2. **Manufacturing:** Involves a full array of production from handicrafts to moulding iron and steel and stamping out plastic toys to assembling delicate computer components or space vehicles Application of power mass production identical products specialized labour, standardized commodities

#### CHARACTERISTICS OF MODERN LARGE-SCALE MANUFACTURING

- Specialization of skills/ methods of production
- Mechanization
- Technical innovation
- Organizational structure and stratification
- Uneven geographic distribution

# **Factors affecting location of Industry**

- Access to market
- Access to raw material
- Access to labour supply
- Access to sources of energy
- Access to transportation& communication skills
- Government policy
- Link to industries

#### **CLASSIFICATION OF INDUSTRIES**

# A. BASED ON SIZE

- 1. Cottage/House Hold
- 2. Small Scale
- 3. Large Scale

#### B. BASED ON INPUT/RAW MATERIAL

1. Agro Based 2.Mineral Based 3.Chemical Based

4. Forest Based 5.Animal Based

#### C. BASED ON OUTPUT/PRODUCT

1. Basic Industries 2.Consumer Industries

#### D. BASED ON OWNERSHIP

1. Public Sector 2.Private Sector 3.Joint Sector

#### TRADITIONAL LAREGE SCALE INDUSTRIAL REGIONS

- High proportion of employment
- High density of housing
- Poor services inferior quality
- Pollution, waste heaps
- Unemployment, emigration derelict land areas

#### **RUHR COAL FIELD - GERMANY**

- One of the major industrial area
- Coal, iron, steel are bases for the economy
- Demand for coal declined so industry shrinking
- Ruhr region is producing 80% of steel production
- Problems of industrial waste and pollution
- New industries emerged in the place of old industries such as car assembly new chemical industry, universities.

## CONCEPT OF HIGH TECHNOLOGY INDUSTRY

- Latest generation manufacturing unit
- Application of R&D unit
- Professional workers (white collar) share large group
- Highly skilled specialists (blue collar) also working
- Robotics are used in assembly line
- Computer Aided Design is used
- Electronic controls
- Neatly spaced, low modern dispersed office plant and lab buildings
- Planned business parks for high-tech industries
- Regionally concentrated, self sustained highly specialized techno-poles
- Silicon Valley in San Francisco and silicon forest near Seattle are techno poles

# STEEL INDUSTRIES

- Base for other industries so it is called basic industry
- Provide raw material to other industries

- Also called heavy industry
- Use bulky material
- Produce heavy material

#### **RAW MATERIALS**

A. Coal B. Lime Stone C. Coke D. Iron ore E. Manganese

#### **FEATURES**

- Located nearby raw material or Near the ports
- Mini steel industries are located nearby markets
- Located nearby integrated steel plants for scrap

#### **DISTRIBUTION**

Most complex and capital-intensive industry a. North America: USA –

North Appalachian region: PITTISBURG, Great lake region: CHICOGO, GARRY, ERIE, CLEVELAND LORAIN BUFALLO, DULUTH

Atlantic region SPARRPWS POINT AND MORRISVILLE b. Europe UK - Birmingham, & Sheffield

Germany: Duisburg, Dortmund Dusseldorf Essen France: Le Creosote St. Ettienne

Russia: Moscow, St. Petersburg. Lipetsk Tula Asia: Nagasaki, Tokyo Yokoma of Japan Shanghai, Tangshan and Wuhan in China

Jamshedpur, KultiBurnpur Durgapur RoukelaBhilai Bokaro Salem Vizak of India

#### **COTTON TEXTILE INDUSTRY**

#### THREE SUB SECTORS

#### 1. Handloom

Provide more labour employment, semi-skilled workers, small capital, spinning weaving and finishing of fabrics are important functions

- 2. **Power loom -** Machines are used, less labour intensive, volume of production increases
- 3. **Mill sector:** highly capital intensive produces cloth in bulk

Distribution: INDIA CHINA USA PAKISTAN UZBEKISTAN EGYPT - Egypt produces half of the world cotton

UK NW EUROPE JAPAN produce textiles by importing raw material from other countries Industry facing stiff competition with synthetic fiber now it is declining trend due to technology

It is shifted to less developed countries

#### **Three Marks Question**

- Q1. Classify industries based on raw material used.
- Ans. (i) Agro-based industries: Example tea, sugar, cotton, jute textile.
  - (ii) Forest based industries: Example paper , pulp , furniture (iii) Mineral Based:
    - (a) Nonferrous industries Copper, Aluminum etc.
    - (b) Ferrous industries: Iron, Manganese
- Q2. What are the Characteristics of foot loose industries.
- Ans. 1. Light industries that often do not use raw material but component parts.
  - 2. Power requirement usually only electricity available from the national grid
  - 3. Employs small labour force
  - 4. Non polluting
  - 5. Accessibility needs to be near a road network.
- Q3. What are the three sub sectors of cotton textile industry?

#### ANS:

- 1. Handloom
- 2. Powerloom
- 3. Mills

#### **Five Marks Question**

- Q1. Why are high tech industries located in the periphery of metropolitan area?
- Ans. 1. Space for single story factories and future expansion.
  - 2. Cheaper land values
  - 3. Accessibility to main roads
  - 4. Pleasant environment
  - 5. Labour supply from nearby.

## CHAPTER - 7 TERTIARY AND QUATERNARY ACTIVITIES

#### GIST OF THE LESSON:

#### **GENERAL FEATURES**

Large number work in tertiary sector and medium number work in secondary sector they include both production and exchange production include provision of service

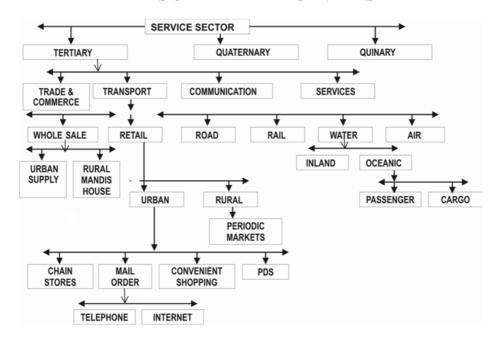
Output is indirectly measured in terms of wages and salaries

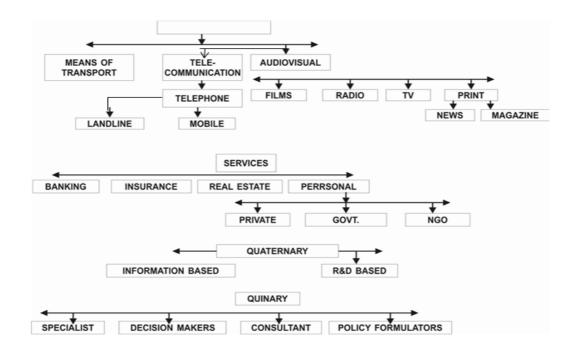
Exchange involves trade transport and communication

Provide commercial output service

Specialized skills are involved

#### TYPES OF TERTIARY ACTIVITIES





#### SOME SELECTED EXAMPLES

#### Tourism:

- 1. Tourist regions
- 2. Factors affecting tourism: demand, transport
- 3. TOURIST ATTRACTIONS: climate, landscape history and art, culture and economy Empowered workers,
- 4. Medical services for overseas .partients in India
- 5. Medical Tourisum

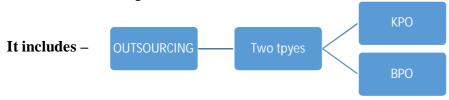
#### **QUATERNARY ACTIVITIES**

- 1. Collection production and dissemination of information
- 2. Production of information
- 3. Research and development
- 4. Specialized knowledge
- 5. Technical skills
- 6. Administrative competence.

#### **QUINARY ACTIVITIES**

The highest level of decision makers, policy makers that focus on the creation, re-arangement and interpretation of news existing ideas. Outsourcinglarge no. of call centers in India and China opened Advantages

- . Cheap,
- Availability of skilled persons,
- ❖ English language communication skills,
- Leads to out migration



#### \*\* Difference between BPO & KPO

S.No.	Basis for comparison	ВРО	КРО
1	Stands for	Business Processing Outsourcing	Knowledge Processing
			Outsourcing
2	Requires	Good communication skill &	Specialized knowledge
		basic computer knowledge	
3	Services	Low end services	High end services
4	Employees	Not so qualified	Highly qualified
5	Expertise in	Process	Knowledge
6	Targets	Cost benefits	Value addition
7	Example	Customer support service (call	R & D, Banking, Legal services
		centres), Tele-marketing etc.	etc.

#### MEDICAL SERVICES FOR OVERSEAS PATIENTS IN INDIA

To write on P.no. 72 under 4<sup>th</sup> point of some selected examples

#### **DIGITAL DIVIDE**

- Availability of information and communication technology
- It is uneven in the world
- It depends on the government policy
- Developed countries provide but developing countries still to provide the ICT to their people

.

#### Three marks question

Q1. Describe the factors affecting tourism. Ans. Ans.

#### -Ans- 1.Demand:

- 1. Improvement in Standard of living and
- 2. Increasing leisure time

#### 2.Transport

- 1. Travelling is easier with better road system.
- 2. Expansion of air travel has made it more comfortable
- 3. Advent of package holidays has reduced the cost.
- Q2. Explain the three characteristics of quaternary activities
- Ans. 1. Knowledge based
  - 2. Refers to more intellectual occupation.
  - 3. Highest income and higher degree of mobility

#### Q3. What is 'Digital Divide'?

Ans. A divide or Gap which has emerged between the developed and developing nations due to difference in economic, political and social disparities. In the field of information and Communication Technology(ICT) developed countries in general have surged forward while Developing countries have lagged behind and this is known as the 'Digital divide'.

#### CHAPTER - 8 TRANSPORT AND COMMUNICATION

#### GIST OF THE LESSON:

GENERAL: Transport is a service for the carriage of persons and goods from one place to the other using human's animals and different kind of vehicles, Movement may be on the land, water, in the air.

#### MODES OF TRANSPORT

LAND, WATER & AIR

LAND TRANSPORT: most of the transport is done over the land such as man, animals, vehicles, pipelines

It is changed due to invention of steam engine, coal, petroleum. Revolution in transport system

#### A. ROAD

- Most economical
- Suitable for short distances
- Suitable for rural areas and hilly areas
- Supplementary to the other means of transport
- Door to door service
- Easy to construct and maintain
- There are metalled and un-metalled roads
- Not suitable during rainy season
- Quality of roads depends on country
- Developed countries have good roads
- The world's total motor able road length is 15 million km 33% in N. America
- Highest road density is found in West Europe
- Traffic flows; increased in recent years. Problems of road ways
- Lack of road side amenities
- Congestion in cities

#### **HIGH WAYS**

- Connect distant places. 80meters wide separate traffic lanes bridges, flyovers and dual carriageways help for traffic flow
- Every city and port is connected with highways
- NORTH AMERICA: road density is 0.65 km per sq km
- Every place is within 20km from highway,
- Cities located in the Pacific Ocean are well connected with the cities of Atlantic Coast.

Important of highway of world

- 1. Trans Canadian highway links Vancouver in British Columbia (West) to St. John city in the New foundland (East).
- 2. Pan American highway connects South America with North America
- 3. Trans -continental Stuart highway connects Darwin with Alice Springs in Australia.
- North America has the highest no. of registered vehicles (NCERT)
- In Russia dense a dense highway network is developed in the industrialised region west of the Urals with Moscow as the hub. The important Moscow-Vladivostok Highway serves the region to the east.
- In china cities are connected with highways.
- In India there are many highways connecting cities like The GoldenQuadrilateral (GQ) or Super Expressway.
- Border roads connect the countries and integrate the people.

#### **B. RAILWAYS**

- Suitable for bulky goods, longer distances, high speed, cheap, it varies from country to country
- Types of gauges Broad gauge:
  - 1. Broad gauge: 1.5 m
  - 2. Standard gauge: 1.44 m
  - 3. Meter gauge: 1:00 m
  - 4. Smaller gauges
- Commuter railways are very popular in In UK, USA Japan and India
- There are 13 lakh km of railways in the world
- Europe has one of the densest networks in the world with 4,40000 km of Railways.
- Belgium has highest density 1km/6.5 sq.km
- Industrial regions have highest density of railways
- Underground railways are important between Paris and London ex. Channel tunnel operated by Euro tunnel group
- In Russia, railways account for about 90 per cent of the country's total transport with a very dense network west of the Urals.
- 40% of rail network is found in North America
- In Canada railways are in public sector
- Australia has 40000 km of railways, in which 25% is found in New south Wales
- In South America Rail network is found in Coffee Fazendas and pampas
- There is only one continental rail between Valparaiso(Chile) and Buenos Aires(Argentina)
- Asia has also high density of rail network
- Africa has 40000 km of rail network, in which South Africa has alone 18000 km or rail net work. The important routes are
  - 1. Benguela railway through Angola to Katanga Zambia copper belt

- 2. Tanzania Railway from the Zambian copper belt to Dar-Es Salam on the coast
- The railway through Botswana and Zimbabwe linking the landlocked states to the Republic of South Africa

#### TRANS CONTINENTAL RAILWAYS

- Run across the continent
- Link two ends of the continent
- Constructed for economic and political reasons

#### 1. TRANS SIBERIAN RAILWAY

- CONNECT St. Petersburg on the west Vladivostok in the east
- Pass through Moscow, Ufa, Novosibirsk, Irkutsk
- Longest with the length of 9332 km
- Double tracked and electrified
- Helped in connecting west markets to Asian region in the east

#### 2. TRANS CANADIAN RAILWAY

- 7050 KM long connect Halifax in the east, with Vancouver on the west coast
- Connect Montreal, Ottawa WinnipegCalgary
- Constructed in 1886
- Connect Quebec industrial region with wheat belt of prairie region
- It also connects Winnipeg to thunder water way
- This is Canada s important train route
- Wheat and meat are important exports

#### 3. THE UNION & PACIFIC RAILWAY

- Connect New York on the pacific coast with San Francisco on the west coast
- Pass through Cleveland, Chicago, Omaha, Evans Ogden Sacramento
- Important exports are ores, grain paper, chemicals and machinery

#### 4. THE AUSTRALIAN TRANS CONTINENTAL RAILWAY

- Run east west across southern part of Australia
- Connect Sydney on the east to Perth on the west coast
- Connect Kalgoorli, Broken Hill Port Augusta
- Another major line connects from Adelaide and Alice Springs also joins with this line

#### 5. THE ORIENT EXPRESS

- Runs from Paris to Istanbul
- Pass through Strasbourg, Munich, Vienna, Budapest and Belgrade
- The travel time from London to Istanbul reduced to 96 hours against 10 days

- The exports are cheese, bacon, oats, wine, fruits, and machinery
- There is a proposal to connect Istanbul with Bangkok through Iran, Pakistan, India, Bangladesh and Myanmar

#### C. WATER TRANSPORT

#### 1. ADVANTAGES

- Cheapest
- Suitable for heavy and bulky goods
- No friction
- ➤ Lest consumption of fuel
- > no route construction
- Various types of ships can travel
- Port facilities to be provided

#### 2. OCEAN ROUTES

- Connect continents
- Connect longer distances
- Cheapest and smooth travel
- No maintenance cost
- Modern liners equipped with radar, wireless and other navigation aids, development of refrigerated chambers for perishable goods containers used to transport goods easily

#### IMPORTANT OCEAN ROUTES

#### I. THE NORTHERN ATLANTIC SEA ROUTE

- connect NE USA with West Europe
- connect two industrially developed countries
- highest trade is taking place on this route
- ¼ th trade takes place through this route
- This is called Big Trunk route
- Connect with old world with new world

#### THE MEDITERRANE AN-INDIAN OCEAN ROUTE

- Connect West Europe with north Africa, south Africa, and Australia
- Before Suez Canal this was an important sea route
- The distance was 6400 longer than Suez Canal between Liverpool to Colombo
- The important exports are gold, diamond, copper, tin groundnut, oil palm coffee and fruits

#### THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE SEA ROUTE

• Connect west European with west African countries

#### NORTH PACIFIC SEA ROUTE

- Connect west coast of North America with Asia
- Connect Vancouver with Yokohama

#### THE SOUTH PACIFIC SEA ROUTE

- Connect with Australia and New Zealand
- Connect scattered islands of Pacific Ocean
- The distance is 12000 km between Panama and Sydney

#### **COASTAL SHIPPING**

- It is convenient for the countries with long coast line Ex. USA China India
- It can reduce the congestion on land routes

#### 3. SHIPPING CANALS

#### SUEZ CANAL

- Constructed in 1869 between Port said and port Suez
- Connect Mediterranean and Red Sea
- The distance reduced 6400 km between Liverpool and Colombo
- The length is 160 km 11 to 15 meters depth
- 100 ships can travel each day
- Time taken is 12 hours to cross this canal.
- Toll is heavy some time it is better to go by cape route
- A railway line follows along this canal
- A navigable fresh canal also follows from Nile

#### THE PANAMA CANAL

- Connects pacific coast with Atlantic coast
- The length is 72 km
- It has SIX lock systems
- It reduces distance between New York and San Francisco about 13000km by Sea.
- The economic importance is less then Suez Canal

#### **INLAND WATERWAYS**

- Rivers, canals, lakes are the means of inland waterways.
- Boats and steamers are used
- Development depends on a. navigability, water flow transport technology in use, breadth & depth of the channal
- Rivers are only means of transport in the dense forest
- Heavy cargo can be transported through canals
- Problems of Inland water ways are –

- Competition with other means of ways
- > Diversion of water to the fields for imigation
- Poor maintenance
- Domestic and international trade can be done through rivers
- > By dredging, stabilizing river banks and building dams and barrages for regulating the flow of water

#### **IMPORTANT WATERWAYS-**

#### 1. THE RHINE WATERWAYS

- Flow through Germany and Netherlands
- ➤ It is navigable up to 700 km form Rotterdam to Basel
- > It flows through rich coalfield and industrial region
- > It is heavily used inland water way in the world
- ➤ Connects with industrial areas of Switzerland, Netherlands & others to North Atlantic Sea route.

#### 2. THE DANUBE WATERWAY

- > Serves Eastern Europe
- It raises in the Black forest & flows through many countries.
- The chief exports are wheat, maize timber, and machinery

#### 3. VOLGA WATERWAY

- Most important water way in Russia
- Provides navigable way up to 11200 km
- Drains into Caspian Sea
- The Volga-Moscow Canal connects it with the Moscow region and the Volga-Don Canal with the Black Sea.

#### 4. THE GREAT LAKES ST. LAWRENCE SEAWAY

- Lake Superior, Huron Erie and Ontario are connected by SOO canal and Welland canal
- Estuary of St. Lawrence river form a inland water way
- > DULUTH and Buffalo are well equipped with all Ocean port facilities
- ➤ The goods are transshipped to small vessels because of rapids
- Canal is 3.5 meters deep to avoid rapids.

#### D. AIR TRANSPORT

#### **Advantages**

Fastest means of transport

- Suitable for longer distances
- Suitable for rugged terrain
- Connect with distant places
- ➤ Most comfortable
- > Suitable for snow and forest areas
- > Suitable in disaster areas

#### It requires

- Capital intensive, maintenance, infrastructure like hangars, landing fuelling facilities
- Mostly found in developed countries
- No place in the world is more than 35 hours distance
- Distance is measured in hours and minutes
- There are more than 250 commercial airlines are working in the world

#### INTERCONTINENTALAIR LINES

- There is dense network of air route in the northern hemisphere
- > Densest one connects USA and West Europe
- ➤ USA alone accounts for 60% of air traffic
- There are limited air services between 10-35 degrees latitudes due to sparse population, limited landmass and economic development

#### E. PIPE LINES

#### **ADVANTAGES**

- Used to transport liquid and gases and also solids by converting into slurry
- > Un interrupted flow
- ► Least consumption of fuel
- > Suitable in the high mountains and sea bottom
- Water, gas, milk also supplied through pipelines
- ➤ USA has dense network of pipe lines
- ▶ Big Inch is one of the important pipelines connecting Gulf of Mexico with NE

#### **USA**

- ➤ In other countries it is used to transport oil from oil field to oil refineries
- ➤ Iran –India pipeline will be longest in the world after completion.

#### **COMMUNICATION**

- 1. Telegraph and telephone are important means of communication
- 2. During mid-twentieth century AT&T was the monopoly company in the world

- ➤ Optical Fiber cable is the breakthrough in the communication
- ➤ THE OFC has following advantages
  - 1.100% error free
  - 2. Large quantity of data can be transferred
  - 3. Security
  - 4.Rapid

#### SATELLITE COMMUNICATION

- The revolution has come with the invention of Satellite and connection with computers
- ➤ It was started in 1970 after in USA
- ➤ It is cheapest among the communication system
- ➤ In India it is started in 1979 with Aryabhatt & Bhaskar I Rohini in-1980 APPLE in 1981
- Today weather forecasting through T.V is a boom.

#### **CYBER SPACE**

- Computer space, it is encompassed with WWW(World Wide Web), it is electronic digital world connecting computers through network
- The majority of users are in USA UK Germany, Japan China India.

#### Three marks question

- Q1. List the factors which affect the inland water transport?
- Ans. 1. Navigability of the water body/channel.
  - 2. Width and depth of the Canal/rivers etc.
  - 3. Continuity in the water flow.
  - 4. Transport technology
  - 5. Demand
- Q2. Why is Road transport better than rail transport?
- Ans (i) Construction and maintenance is cheaper than railways.
  - (ii) Provides "Door to Door" services.
  - (iii) Can be constructed over undulating terrain.

#### Five marks question

- Q1. List out the advantages of pipeline transport.
- Ans. (i) Pipeline can be laid through difficult terrain as well as under water.
  - (ii) Initial cost of laying pipeline is high but subsequent cost of maintenance and operation is low.

- (iii) Pipelines ensure steady supply.
- (iv) It minimizes tranship losses and delays.
- (v) It incolves very low consumption of energy.
- (vi) It is a quick, cheap, efficient and environment friendly mode of transportation

#### CHAPTER - 9 INTERNATIONAL TRADE

#### GIST OF THE LESSON:

#### TWO LEVELS OF TRADE

#### NATIONALAND INTERNATIONAL

The initial trade was Barter Systemin which goods are exchanged

Before currency there were flint stones, obsidian, cowries shells, tigers paw, whales teeth ,dogs teeth skins, furs, cattle,rice,pepper, corns, salt,small tools, copper, silver and gold.

#### HISTORY OF INTERNATIONAL TRADE

- > Trade was restricted to small distance due to theft
- People used to satisfy their immediate facilities
- ➤ Only rich people used to bring jewellary and other ornaments
- ➤ The silk route is an example connecting with china and Rome
- ➤ Wool silk precious stones; were trade
- After Rome disintegration it was not given importance
- The slave trade was started with the colonization
- > After industrial revolution raw material and finished products are given importance
- During world wars many countries-imposed taxes.
- After the world war GATT was formed

#### WHY DOES INTERNATIONAL TRADE EXIST?

- 1. Specialization in production
- 2. Division of labor
- 3. Comparative advantage
- 4. Complementarily and transferability of goods & services
- 5. Mutual benefit
- 6. Foreign policy
- 7.Developed transport and communication

#### **BASIS OF INTERNATIONAL TRADE**

- DIFFERENCE IN NATIONAL RESOURCES
- ➤ Geological structure
- ➤ Mineral resources

- Climate
- Population factors
- Cultural factors
- > Size of population
- > Stage of economic development
- > Extent of foreign investment
- > Transport

#### IMPORTANT ASPECTS OF INTRNATIONAL TRADE

- ➤ Volume of trade
- Composition of trade
- Direction of trade
- Balance of trade

#### TYPES OF INTERNATIONAL TRADE

- ➤ Bilateral trade
- ➤ Multilateral trade

**DUMPING** - The Practice of selling commodity in two countries at a price that differs for reasons not related to costs is called Dumping.

#### **WTO**

- > GATT was formed in 1948
- ➤ The GATT was transformed in to WTO on 1.1.1995
- ➤ It maintains the global rules between the nations
- It resolves the disputes between the nations related to trade
- It covers trade services, telecommunication and banking, intellectual rights
- It gives importance to rich nations
- > It is not favour to poor nations

#### **REGIONAL TRADE BLOCS -**

#### (ASEAN, CIS, EU, LAIA, NAFTA, OPEC, SAFTA)

#### CONCERNS RELATED TO INTERNATIONAL TRADE

- Regional specialization
- ➤ Higher level of production
- Better standard of living
- ➤ World wide availability of goods and services
- > Equalization of prices and wages

- Diffusion of knowledge and culture
- > Leads to dependence
- Uneven level of development
- Exploitation
- Commercial revelry leads to wars
- ➤ Affect life
- ➤ Increase in production and consumption of resource
- Depletion of resources
- > More pollution

#### GATE WAYS OF INTRNATIONAL TRADE

#### **PORTS**

- Provide facilities to cargo and passenger
- Provide docking, loading unloading, storage facilities for cargo
- Maintain navigable channels
- Arrange tugs and barges, provide labor managerial services
- The quantity of cargo handled by the port is an indicator of level of development of its hinter land

#### TYPES OF PORT

#### > BASED ON CARGO HANDLED

1. Industrial ports 2. Commercial ports 3. Comprehensive ports

#### > BASED ON LOCATION

1. Inland ports 2. outports

#### > BASED ON SPECIALISED FUNCTION

1. Oil ports 2. Ports of call 3. Packet station 4. Entre pot ports 5. Naval ports

#### Three marks question

Q1. Why are ports always referred to as gateway of International trade?

Ans. The world port is derived from the latin word "Porta" meaning Gateway.

Port is a connecting link between land and water.

It is a place on the coast where ships start and end their journey.

Here reached Cargo is unloaded and the Cargo which is to be exported is loaded Port provides facilities of export and import

It is well connected to the interior of the country by a good network of roadways and railways.

- Q2. What are the function of WTO?
- Ans. (1) Solve disputes among the countries.
  - (2) Provide trade services.
  - (3) Deals with the global rules of trade between nations.
- Q3. What is international trade? Which are the two types of international trade? Give one characteristics of each.

Ans. International Trade- The movement of goods and Services from areas of Surplus to deficit area between two countries.

The two types of international trade

- 1. Bilateral trade- The exchanging of good between two countries.
- 2. Multilateral trade- The exchange takes place between several countries on regular basis.

#### Five marks question

Q1. Classify ports on various bases.

Ans. On the basis of Cargo handled

- 1. Industrial ports
- 2. Commercial ports
- 3. Comprehensive

On the basis of location

- 1. Inland ports
- 2. Outports

On the basis of specialized functions

- 1. Oil ports
- 2. Ports of call
- 3. Packet stations
- 4. Entre port
- 5. Naval ports.

#### CHAPTER - 10 HUMAN SETTELEMENTS

#### GIST OF THE LESSON:

Classification of settlements

- 1. Rural settlements
- 2. Urbansettlements

Patterns of settlements

- 1. Compact or nucleated settlements
- 2. Dispersed settlements

#### **RURALSETTLEMENTS**

#### FACTORSINFLUENCINGRURALSETTLEMENTS

- 1. Watersupply
- 2. Land
- 3. Upland
- 4. Building material
- 5. Defense

#### PLANNED SETTLEMENTS

- 1. Constructed bygovernment
- 2. Provideshelter, water anddrainagefacilities
- 3. Provideinfrastructure facilities
- 4. ex. Villagization in Ethiopia, Rajasthan (Indira Gandhi command area) canal in India

#### RURALSETTELEMENT PATTERN

#### I. BASED ON SETTING

1. Plain village, 2. plateau villages, 3. Coastal villages, 4. Forest villages, 5. Desert villages

#### II. BASED ON FUNCTION

1. Farming, 2 fisherman villages, 3. lumberjack villages, 4. Pastoral villages

#### III BASED ON SHAPE

- 1. Linear, 2. Rectangular, 3. Circular, 4. Star-shaped, 5. T-shaped, 6. Double Village,
- 7. Cross shaped Village

#### PROBLEMSOF RURALSETTLEMENTS

- 1. Lack of infrastructure
- 2. Poor supply of water
- 3. Poor road facility
- 4. Waterbornediseases
- 5. Drought and flood
- 6. Absence of toilet and garbagedisposal
- 7: lack of ventilation
- 8. Lack of health facilities and education

#### CLASSIFICATIONOF TOWNS ON THE BASISOF FORMS

- 1. Linear,
- 2. square
- 3. Crescent

Ex. 1. ADDISABABA (THE NEWFLOWER- CAPITAL OF ETHOPIA)

2 CANBERRA (CAPITAL OF AUSTRALIA)

#### CLASSIFICATION OF TOURIST BASED ON SIZE, SERVICE & FUNCTIONS

- TOWN: enlarged villages manufacturing, retail, wholesale, professional services
- **CITY:** it is a leading town, greater number offunctions, transport terminals, major financialinstitutions, and regional administrative offices
- **CONURBATION**: coined by PATRICK GEDDES in 1915. Merging number of towns / cities ex. London, Manchester, Chicago, Tokyo
- **MEGOLOPOLIS USED BY**Jean Guttmann: super metropolitan region it is a union of conurbationsex Boston to Washington
- **MILLION CITIES:** London is the first town to reach onemillion in 1800 followed byParis in 1850, NewYork 1860, 1950 therewere 80cities & 512 in 2016(NCERT)
- **DISTRIBUTION OF MEGA CITIES** Population More than 10 million, New York is the first to attain this status in 1950 with population 12.5 million.
- There are 31 mega cities at present. (<u>www.un.org</u> as on 20.07.2017- NCERT)

#### PROBLEMS OF HUMAN SETTLEMENTS IN DEVELOPING COUNTRIES

- 1. Unsustainable concentration of population
- 2. Congested housing and streets

- 3. Lack of drinking water
- 4. Lack of electricity, sewagedisposal health and education facilities
- 5. Lack of transport facilities
- 6. Health and education facilities
- 7. Water and air pollution

#### PROBLEMSOF URBAN SETTLEMENTS

#### I. ECONOMIC PROBLEMS

- 1. Decreasing employment
- 2. Poor of semiskilled labour
- 3. Saturated employment opportunities

#### II SOCIOCULTURALPROBLEMS

- 1. Lack of health and educational facilities,
- 2. Transport facilities
- 3. Unbalanced sexratio,
- 4. Social ills,
- 5. Insufficientfinancial Resources,
- 6. Lack of basic needs

#### Three marks question

- Q1. What is a healthy city? Explain its basic features.
- Ans. World Health Organization suggests that a healthy city must have
  - A clean and safe environment
  - Meets the basic needs of all its inhabitants.
  - Involves the community in local government.
  - Provides easily accessible Health Service
- Q2. Classify rural settlements pattern on the basis of forms or shapes.
- Ans. 1. Linear pattern
  - 2. Rectangular pattern
  - 3. Circular pattern
  - 4. Star like pattern
  - 5. Cross shapedpattern

- Q3. Write a note on Addis Ababa.
- Ans. Addis-New and Ababa-Flower. This capital city of Ethiopia is often called the New flower. It was established in 1878. It is located on a hill valley topography. Anew airport known as Bole airport has also been constructed. This multi –functional city is located in the centre of Ethiopia and grown rapidly in the recent past.

### Five marks question

- Q1. What are the problems of rural settlement in developing countries?
- Ans (1) Poorly equipped with infrastructure
  - (2) Inadequate water supply
  - (3) General absence of toilets and Garbage disposal facilities.
  - (4) The house made up of mud, wood and thatch remains susceptible to damage during natural calamities.
  - (5) Lack of proper ventilation
  - (6) Unmetalled roads and lack of modern communication network..

## **SECTION-5**

# CHAPTER -WISE MCQ QUESTION BOOK-I

## (FUNDAMENTALS OF HUMAN GEOGRAPHY)

#### **CHAPTER 1, HUMAN GEOGRAPHY: NATURE AND SCOPE**

<b>Q1.</b>	Who i	s considered	the	father	of	' human	geogr	aphy	?
------------	-------	--------------	-----	--------	----	---------	-------	------	---

- a. Eratosthenes
- b. Ratzel
- c. E.c Semple
- d. Vidal de la Blache
- Q2. Who gave the concept of 'stop and go determinism'?
- a. Griffith Taylor
- b. Ratzel
- c. E.C Semple
- d. Vidal de la Blache
- Q3. Who of the following is not a sub field of social geography?
- a. Medical geography
- b. Historical geography
- c. Cultural geography
- d. Military geography
- Q4. In which period quantitative thought became popular in geographical studies?
- a. 1850
- b. 1920
- c. 1900
- d. Late 1950s
- Q5. Which school of thought is mainly concerned with social well being of people
- a. Radical
- b. Behavioural

d. **Possibilism** Q6. Stop and go determinism is also known as a. **Possibilism** b. **Determinism** Neo determinism c. d. None of the above Q7. Which of the following is a sub field of economic geography? Geography of leisure a. b. Military geography Historical geography c. d. Geography of agriculture Q8. The study of inter relationship between human and environment is **History** a. b. Geography **Economics** c. **Political science** d. Q9. The most important factor in the interaction between people and environment **Human intelligence** a. b. **Technology** People's perception c. d. **Human brotherhood** Q10 Which of the following is not an approach of human geography Radical a. **Behavioural** b. Welfare c. **Explanation and description** d.

Welfare

c.

#### **CHAPTER 2-POPULATION: DISTRIBUTION, DENSITY AND GROWTH**

O1. The	e continent that has	the highest gr	owth rate of	population	

- a. Africa
- b. South America
- c. Asia
- d. North America
- Q2. The continent that has the lowest growth rate of population
- a. Africa
- b. South America
- c. Asia
- d. Europe
- Q3. Which of the following is not an area of sparse population?
- a. Atacama
- b. South East Asia
- c. Equatorial region
- d. Polar region
- Q4. Which of the following is not a push factor?
- a. Water shortage
- b. Un employment
- c. Medical facilities
- d. Epidemics
- Q5. Which of the following is not a pull factor?
- a. Water shortage
- b. employment
- c. Medical facilities
- d. Educational facilities
- Q6. Which country has the highest density of population in the world
- a. India
- b. China
- c. USA

- d. Singapore
- Q7. Population increased by the difference between births and deaths in a particular region between two points of time
- a. Growth of population
- b. Natural Growth of population
- c. Positive Growth of population
- d. Negative Growth of population
- Q8. Total population of the world at the beginning of 21 st century was
- a. 5 billion
- b. 6 billion
- c. 7 billion
- d. 4 billion
- Q9. The country having lowest growth rate of population
- a. Norway
- b. Germany
- c. Estonia
- d. Latvia
- Q10. Which one of the following is not a component of population change
- a.` Birth rate
- b. Sex ratio
- c. Death rate
- d. Migration

#### **CHAPTER- 3 POPULATION COMPOSITION**

- Q.1 Which one of the following country has highest sex ratio in the world –
- (a) India
- b) China
- (c) Japan
- (d) Latvia
- Q.2 Which one of the following country lowest sex ratio in the world?

(a)	Pakistan		
(b)	Iran		
<b>(c)</b>	Saudi Arabia		
(d)	Brazil		
Q.3	Which one of the following figures represents the working age group of the population?		
(a)	15 – 65 years		
(b)	15 – 66 years		
(c)	15 – 64 years		
<b>(d)</b>	15 – 59 years		
Q.4	Which one of the following reflected by Age – Sex pyramid?		
(a)	Age structure		
(b)	Sex structure		
(c)	population growth		
<b>(d)</b>	All of above		
Q.5	How many types of Age – Sex Pyramid?		
(a)	2		
(b)	4		
(c)	5		
<b>(d)</b>	3		
Q.6	Triangular shaped Pyramid refers to -		
(a)	Expanding Population		
(b)	Constant population		
(c)	Declining population		
(d)	None		
Q.7	Bell shaped Pyramid refers to		
(a) Expanding Population			
b) Constant population			
c) Declining population			
(d) None			
Q.8	Narrow base of age – sex pyramid refers to		

- (a) High birth rate
- (b) High death rate
- (c) Low birth rate
- (d) All of above
- Q.9 Broad base of age sex pyramid refers to –
- (a) High birth rate
- (b) High death rate
- (c) Low birth rate
- (d) All of above
- Q.10 In India literacy rate denotes the percentage of population above --
- (a) 8 years of age
- (b) 7 years of age
- (c) 5 years of age
- (d) 6 years of age

#### **CHAPTER- 4 HUMAN DEVELOPMENT**

- Q.1 Which one of the following best describes development -
  - (a) An increase in size
- (b) A positive change in quality
- (c) A constant in size
  - (d) A simple change in quality
- Q.2 Which one of the following scholars introduced the concept of Human development –
- (a) Humbolt
- (b) Dr. Mahabub ul Haq
- (c) Ellen c. Sempul
- (d) Ratzel
- Q.3 Which one of the following is not approach to human development -
- (a) Income
- (b) Welfare
- (c) Equality
- (d) Capability

Q.4 When was the first Human development Report published by UNDP-				
(a) 1990				
(b) 1992				
(c) 1995				
(d) 1996				
Q.5 Which one of the following officially Proclaim the Gross National Happiness (GNH) as the				
measure of the country s progress -				
(a) Bhutan				
(b) Nepal				
(c) India				
(d) Canada				
Q.6 On the basis of the human development countries can be classified in to –				
(a) 3 groups				
(b) 2 groups				
(c) 5 groups				
(d) 6 groups				
Q.7 Which one of the following has highest human development Index -				
(a) Norway				
(b) Sweden				
(c) Germany				
(d) Canada				
Q.8 Which one of the following is not Pillar of human development -				
(a) Equity				
(b) Sustainability				
(c) Welfare				
(d) Productivity				
Q.9 Growth refers to –				
(a) An increase in size				
(b) A positive change in quality				
(c) A constant in size				

- (d) A simple change in quality
  Q.10 Capability approach associated with -
- (a) Prof. Amartya Sen
- (b) Dr. Mahabub ul Haq
- (c) Carl Ritter
- (d) Ratzel

#### CH - 5 - PRIMARY ACTIVITIES

- 1. Which one the following is not a plantation crop?
- A. Coffee
- B. Wheat
- C. Sugarcane
- D. Rubber
- 2. In which of the following countries co-operative farming was the most successful experiment
- A. Russia
- B. Denmark
- C. The Netherlands
- D. India
- 3. Growing of flowers is called
- A. Truck farming
- B. Factory farming
- C. Floriculture
- D. Mixed farming
- 4. Which one of the following types of cultivation was developed by European colonist?
- A. Kolkhoz
- B. Mixed farming
- C. Viticulture
- D. Plantation
- 5. Which one of the following does not follow monoculture?
- A. Dairy farming
- B. Plantation agriculture

#### C. Mixed farming

- D. Commercial grain farming
- 6. In which of the following regions is extensive commercial grain cultivation not practiced?
- A. American Canadian prairies
- B. Pampas of Argentina
- C. European steppes
- D. Africa
- 7. Which sector of the economy removes or harvests products directly from the earth in order to extract raw materials or food?
- A. Secondary
- B. Primary
- C. Tertiary
- D. Quaternary
- 8. Which sector of the economy takes raw materials from the primary sector and manufactures them into goods?
- A. Primary
- B. Secondary
- C. Tertiary
- D. Quaternary
- 9. Which sector of the economy provides the goods and services to business and consumers?
- A. Quinary
- B. Secondary
- C. Primary
- D. Tertiary
- 10. Hunting & gathering is a part of which sector?
- A. Primary
- B. Secondary
- C. Tertiary
- D. Quaternary
- 11. In which of the following regions is primitive agriculture practiced?

A.	Amazon basin
B.	Ganga basin
C.	Red basin
D.	Hwang ho basin
	CH – 6 – SECONDARY ACTIVITIES
Q. 1	.Manufacturing Industry is considered in which Activities?
1.Pri	imary
2. <b>Se</b>	condary
3. Te	ertiary
4. Qı	uaternary
Q.2.	which of the following industry is agro based industry?
1. Le	eather
2. Ce	ement
3. Co	otton
4. Ir	on & Steel Industry
Q.3.	The Ruhr coal field lies in which country?
1. Ul	K
2. US	SA
3. Fr	rance
4. <b>G</b>	ermany
Q.4.	Which one of the following types of Industries produce raw material for other Industries?
1. Co	ottage
2.Ba	sic Industry
3. Sn	nall
4. Fo	ootloose industry
Q.5	Which of the following is not a factors affecting of industry?
1.Ra	w material
2. M	oney
3. <b>I</b> n	ternet
4.Tr	ansport

2. Iron	&Steel Industry			
3. Jute				
4. Khad	4. Khadi & Village Industry.			
Q.7. W	ho manufacture the largest quantity of jute goods in the world?			
1. China	a			
2. Bang	ladesh			
3. India				
4. Myaı	nmar			
Q.8. WI	hich of the following industry is known as "rust bowl"?			
1. Iron	&Steel industry			
2. Chen	nical Industry			
3.Cotto	n Industry			
4. Suga	r Industry.			
Q.9. WI	hich one of the following industry is a weight loose industry?			
1. Cotto	on			
2. Elect	ronics			
3. Sugar	r Industry			
4. Alum	ninum.			
Q.10. The industry which is managed by Govt is known as .				
1. Private sector				
2. Public Sector				
3. Joint Sector				
4. Cooperative sector				
CH – 7 - TERTIARY AND QUATERNARY ACTIVITIES				
1.	Which one of the following is a tertiary activity?			
A. l	Farming			
B. 7	Trading			
C.	Weaving			

Q.6. Which among the following does not belong to India's Major large scale Industry?

1. Cotton

- D. Hunting
- 2. Which one of the following activities is NOT a secondary sector activity?
- A. Iron Smelting
- B. Making Garment
- C. Catching fish
- D. Basket Weaving
- 3. Which one of the following sectors provides most of the employment in Delhi, Mumbai, Chennai and Kolkata?
- A. Primary
- B. Secondary
- C. Service
- D. Quaternary
- 4. Jobs that involve high degrees and level of innovations are known as:
- A. Secondary activities
- B. Quinary activities
- C. Primary activities
- D. Quaternary activities
- 5. Which one of the following is related to quaternary sector?
- A. Manufacturing computers
- B. University teaching
- C. Paper & raw pulp production
- D. Printing books
- 6. Which one out of the following statement is not true?
- A. Outsourcing reduces the cost & increases efficiency
- B. At times engineering & manufacturing job can also be outsourced
- C. BPOs have better business opportunities as compared to KPOs
- D. There may be dissatisfaction among job seekers in the countries that outsource the jobs
- 7. Expand BPO
- A. Business Progress Outstanding

- B. Business Process Outsourcing
- C. Bharat Pragati organization
- D. Business Process Outgoing
- 8. Which of the following industries is considered part of the quinary sector?
- A. Farming
- B. Manufacturing
- C. Retail
- D. Robotics
- 9. Which of the following best describes the quinary sector?
- A. It is goods- based
- B. It is information -based
- C. It is domestic service based
- D. It is finance based
- 10. The quinary industry sector can be thought of as a branch or addition from which sector?
- A. Tertiary
- B. Secondary
- C. Quaternary
- D. Primary

#### **Ch-8-TRANSPORT AND COMMUNICATION**

- 1. What are the modes of transport?
- (i) land.
- (ii) Water
- (iii) air
- (iv) all
- 2. Name two terminals of the orient express.
- (i) Paris
- (ii) Istambul
- (iii) Both
- (iv) None
- 3. Name the famous pipelines of the world.

#### Big inch (i) (ii) Tape (iii) Both (iv) none 4. Name the longest railway route of the world. Trans Siberian railway (i) (ii) Trans Canadian railway Trans Australian railway (iii) (iv) None 5. Which is the busiest sea route of the world? (i) North atlantic Pacific route (ii) Iii Indian ocean (iv) Panama route 6. Name the terminal points of Suez canal.

Port suez

port said

**Both** 

None

Danube

Volga

Rhine

None

St. Laurence

Pacific sea route

North Atlantic sea route

South atlantic sea route

9. Which is the fastest means of transport?

Which is the busiest inland waterway of the world?

Which sea route is called the big trunk route?

(i)

(ii)

(iii) (iv)

7.

(i)

(ii)

(iii)

(iv) 8.

(i)

(ii)(iii)

(iv)

(i)	Airways	
(ii)	Railways	
Iii	Waterways	
(iv)	None	
10. WI	hich country is the largest consumer of internet?	
(i)	USA	
(ii)	China	
Iii	Japan	
(iv)	Germany	
СН 9-	INTERNATIONAL TRADE	
1. Hov	v many types of trade?	
(i)One	e	
(ii)Tw	o	
iii) Th	ree	
(iv) Fo	our	
2. In which year WTO was formed?		
(i) <b>199</b>	5	
(ii)199	96	
(iii)19	98	
(iv) 20	000	
3. In w	hich year GATT was formed?	
(i) 194	46	
(ii) <b>1948</b>		
(iii)1950		
(iv) 1955		
4.Whi	ch association is the largest single market in the world?	
(i) EU	J	
(ii)OP	EC	
(iii)SA	FTA	
(iv) As	SEAN	

5.India is the member of which trading block?
(i)OPEC
(ii)SAARC
(iii)SAFTA
(iv) ASEAN
6. What are the components of International trade?
(i) Volume
(ii) Composition
(iii)Direction
(iv)All
7. Which is the largest trading partner of India?
(i)UAE
(ii) USA
(iii) CHINA
(iv) JAPAN
8. Which of the following is a Oil port?
(i) <b>Tripoli</b>
(ii) Mumbai
(iii) London
(iv) New york
9. Where is WTO Headquarter located?
(i)Geneva
(ii) Rome
(iii) Hegue
(iv) Paris
10. Where is the headquarter of OPEC
(i) Vienna
(ii)Singapore
(iii) Jakarta
(iv) Mumbai

# **CH 10-HUMAN SETTLEMENTS**

1. Which were the first million cities in the world?

(1) Mumbai
(ii) Singapore
(iii) London
(iv) Tokyo
2. Name the country with 100% urban population.
(i) Singapore
(ii) Japan
(iii) Great Britain
(iv) USA
3. Which of the following is not a pattern of human settlement?
(i) Linear
(ii) Circular
(iii) Star-shaped
(iv)Hamleted
4. Which of the following is not aype of human settlement?
(i) Clustered
(ii) Semi-clustered
(iii) Hamleted
(iv) Linear
5. Who coined the word, CONURBATION?
(i) Patrick Geddes
(ii) Amartya sen
(iii) Jene Gottman
(iv) Ratzel
6. Which one of the following forms of settlement develops along either side of roads, rivers or canals?
(i) Circular
(ii) Linear

(iii) Cross-shaped
(iv) Square
7. Who coined the word, MEGALOPOLIS?
(i)Patrick Geddes
(ii) Jean Guttmann
(iii) Ratzel
(iv) Sample
8. Which of the following is a planned city?
(i) Canberra
(ii) Mumbai
(iii) Calcutta
(iv) Lucknow
9. In which of the following regions has the oldest well-documented urban settlement found?
(i) Huang He valley
(ii) Indus valley
(iii) Nile valley
(iv) Mesopotamia
10. How many of the following cities in India have attained the million status in 2011?
(i) 42
(ii) 48
(iii) 53
(iv) 56

# **SECTION-6**

# GIST OF THE CHAPTERS BOOK-II (INDIA PEOPLE AND ECONOMY) CHAPTER - 1

#### GIST OF THE LESSON:

POPULATION: DISTRIBUTION, DENSITY, GROWTH AND COMPOSITION

#### DISTRIBUTION OF POPULATION

- Population is distributed unevenly.
- Uttar Pradesh has the highest population followed by Maharashtra, Bihar ,West Bengal , Andhra Pradesh and Madhya Pradesh
- ➤ Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, West Bengal, Andhra Pradesh, Tamil Nadu, Madhya Pradesh, Rajasthan, Karnataka, Gujrat account for 76% of population.
- Arunachal Pradesh takes 0.11% & Uttarakhand takes 0.83% of total population of India.

#### FACTORS RESPONSIBLE FOR UNEVEN DISTRIBUTION OF POPULATION

- > PHYSICAL FACTORS: climate, water, terrain, transport,
- > SOCIO ECONOMIC FACTORS: Settled Agriculture. Agri. develop. pattern of human settlements, dev. Of transport, industries, urbanization
- ➤ **HISTORICAL FACTORS**: development of cities such as Mumbai, Kolkata, Chennai by British

# **DENSITY OF POPULATION**

- Number of persons per unit area.
- The density of population (2011) is 382 person / sq km.
- Lowest population density in Arunachal Pradesh: 17 person/ per sq km.
   Highest population density in Bihar (1102)followed by West Bengal(1029), Kerala(859)& Uttar Pradesh(828)
- Himalayan states and North East have low density whereas Ganga plain has highest density and other states have moderate population
- Physiological density= Total Population / Net Cultivated Area
- Agricultural density = Total Agriculture Population / Net CultivableArea

#### **GROWTH OF POPULATION**

Change in the number of people living in a particular area between two points of time. It is expressed in percentage.

Two components: 1. Natural 2. Induced

Natural growth is analyzed by crude birth rate and crude death rate

Induced components are explained by volume of inward and outward movement of people in any given area. The annual growth is 1.7 % census (2001-11)

#### PHASES OF POPULATION GROWTH IN INDIA

Following four phases are recognized in demographic history of India:-

**STAGE I:** 1901 -1921 stagnant growth, slow growth rate, BR & DR were high, poor medical facilities, low literacy rate, inefficient distribution of food and basic facilities. **Demographic divide**;

**STAGE II**: 1921-51: steady growth, improvement in health and sanitation low mortality rate. Better transport facilities, high birth rate and decline death rate. The influence of world war and Economic depression influenced, **Mortality Induced Growth** 

**STAGE III**: 1951-81: Population explosion, rapid fall in mortality rate, high fertility rate, introduction of five year plans, improvement of living condition, increased migration. **Fertility Induced Growth** 

**STAGE IV:** 1981 onwards: growth rate declined, crude birth rate declined due to increase marriage age, improved quality of life& education.

FEATURES OFADOLESCENTS POPULATION: High potential, quite vulnerable.

# CHALLENGES FACED BY SOCIETY ABOUT ADOLESCENTS

- ► Lower age at marriage
- ➤ Illiteracy
- > Female illiteracy
- School dropouts
- > Low intake of nutrients
- ➤ High rate of maternal mortality of adolescent mothers,
- ➤ High rate of HIV AIDS
- Physical and mental disability
- Drug abuse alcoholism
- > Juvenile delinquency
- Committence of Crime

#### STEPS TAKEN BY THE GOVERNMENT TO CHANNELIZE THE ADULTS

National youth policy (2014)

- ➤ Holistic vision for the youth of India
- To empower the youth of the country to achieve their full potential
- To enable India to find its rightful place in the community of nations
- NYP defines youth as persons in age group of 15-29 years
- Policy of skill development for adolescents (2015)
- Encourage the youth for constructive development of the society
- > Improve patriotism and responsible citizens
- Youth empowerment
- ➤ Giving importance for youth health, sports and recreation
- > Innovation in the field of science

#### > POPULATION COMPOSITION

Population composition is a distinct field of study within population geography with a vast coverage of analysis of age and sex, place of residence, ethnic characteristics, tribes, language, religion, marital status, literacy and education, occupational characteristics, etc

#### **RURAL URBAN COMPOSITION**

- ➤ 68.8% population lives in villages.
- ➤ India has 640867 villages according to 2011 census.
- The state of Himachal Pradesh, Bihar and Sikkim have very high percentage of rural population
- ➤ Goa, Maharashtra and Tamil Nadu have low rural population
- Union Territories have low rural population except Dadra and Nagar Haveli.
- The size of villages varies from one region to other region.
- In the North- East India and Rajasthan, it is less than 200 persons while it is more than 17,000 persons in Kerala and in parts of Maharashtra.

# **URBAN POPULATION**

It is equal to 31.16 % it is quite low.

> It is increased due to economic development, improvement in health, hygienic conditions

#### LINGUISTIC COMPOSITION

- According to Grierson (Linguistic survey of India 1903-1928) there are 179 languages 544 dialects, there are about 22 scheduled languages
- ➤ Hindi speakers are 40.42% the smallest language is Kashmiri 0.01%.

# LANGUAGE FAMILIES

- ➤ Austric(Nishada) 1.38 % Mon-Khmer Meghalaya Nicobar,
- > Munda-West Bengal, Jharkhand,

- Odisha, Assam, Madhya Pradesh, Maharashtra
- Dravidian (20%) Dravida Tamil Nadu, Karnataka, Kerala, Andhra Pradesh, Bihar, Odisha, Madhya Pradesh,
- ➤ Sino-Tibetan(0.85%) Tibeto- Myanamari Jammu & Kashmir, Himachal Pradesh, Sikkim, Siamese-Chinese --Assam, Aruncahal Pradesh, Nagaland, Mizoram, Tripura.
- Indo-European-North Western, Central & North India (73%)- Indo Aryan

#### **RELIGIOUS COMPOSITION**

Hindus are distributed in all states except in the districts of state along Indo-Bangladesh border, Jammu & Kashmir, North- East states

- Muslims are concentrated in Jammu & Kashmir, West Bengal, Kerala, Uttar Pradesh, Delhi, Lakshadweep
- ➤ Christian population is concentrated in mainly western coast & NE states
- > Sikhs are concentrated in Punjab
- > Jains Buddhists are concentrated in Rajasthan, Maharashtra and Gujarat
- Tribes are located in North East & Central India
- ➤ Hindus -79.8% Muslims-14.2% Christians 2.3% Sikhs 1.7% buddhists-0.7 jains-0.4% others-0.7% ,Reliogion not stated-0.2%

#### COMPOSITION OF WORKING POPULATION

- ➤ Main worker: work more than 183 days(or six months)
- Marginal worker: less than 183 days(or six Months)
- ➤ 39.8% worker 60.2% non-workers
- Large % of dependent population. Large number is unemployed
- ➤ 39.6% working population in Goa, 49.9 per cent in Daman and Diu

# **OCCUPATIONAL CATEGORIES**

- 1. Cultivators
- 2. Agricultural labourers
- 3. House hold industrial workers
- 4. Other workers

# SPATIAL VARIATION OF WORKING PARTICIPATION

- 1. Himachal Pradesh and Nagaland have high proportion of cultivators
- 2. Andhra Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Odisha, Jharkhand, West Bengal high proportion of Agricultural Workers

- 3. In urban centers high proportion of services
- 4. Non availability of land and presence of industries encourage workers

# **Three Marks Questions**

- Q1. What is the density of population? Mention four states of India which have highest density of population.
- Ans. Density of population = population / area
  - 1-Bihar
  - 2-West Bengal
  - 3-Kerala
  - 4-Uttar Pradesh are the four states of India which have the highest density of population
- Q2. Why is there uneven distribution of population in India?
- Ans. (i) Climate and relief
  - (ii) Water supply
  - (iii) Soil fertility
  - (iv) Agricultural productivity
  - (v) Development of transport network
  - (vi) Industrialization and urbanization.

#### **Five Marks Questions**

- Q1. What do you understand by population growth? Name the components of population growth. Explain the four distinct phases of growth identified within the period of 1901-2001.
- Ans. Growth of population is the change in the number of people living in a particular area between two points of time

Population growth has two components namely- natural and induced. The natural growth is analysed by assessing the crude birth and death rate, the induced components are explained by the volume of inward and outward movement of people in any given area. The four distinct phases of growth identified within the period of 1901-2001

Phases	Period	Population growth	Causes	
1	1901-1921	Stagnant growth	Poor medical facilities,illiteracy, inefficient distribution of basic necessities	
2	1921-1951	Steady growth	Improvement in health and sanitation, transport and communication	

3	1951-1981	Pop. Explosion	Development activities introduced in the country, Improvement in Economy
4	After 1981	Period of declining growth	Increase in the mean age at marriage education of after with slow rate females.

# CHAPTER - 2

# MIGRATION: TYPES, CAUSES AND CONSEQUENCES

# GIST OF THE LESSON:

1. First census was conducted in 1872 and first complete census in 1881.

#### BASED ON PLACE OF BIRTH

- In 1961 two components introduced a. place of birth b. duration
- In 1971 place of last residence and duration in the place of enumeration is added in 1981

PLACE OF BIRTH: if the place of birth is different from the place of enumeration –life time migrant

➤ PLACE OF RESIDENCE: if the place of last residence is different from the place of enumeration-known by last residence

#### STREAMS OF MIGRATION

- 1. Rural to urban
- 2. Rural to rural
- 3. Urban to rural
- 4. Urban to urban
  - ➤ During 2001-315 million migrants- based on last residence
  - ➤ 98 million changed their place of residence in the last ten years
  - > The stream was dominated by female migrants
  - Female predominate the streams of short distance rural to rural migration
  - Male domination in rural to urban
  - ➤ 96% migrated from neighboring countries to India

#### SPATIAL VARIATION

- 1. Migrants from Uttar Pradesh & Bihar came to Maharashtra, Delhi, Gujrat, and Haryana
- 2. Maharashtra stands first in immigration
- 3. Greater Mumbai received highest no. of migrants

# **CAUSES OF MIGRATION**

- 1. PUSH FACTORS
- 2. PULL FACTORS

- ➤ **PUSH FACTORS** Migrate from rural to urban due to poverty, high pop. Pressure on land, lack of basic facilities, flood, drought, cyclonic storms, earthquake, wars local conflicts, stagnation in agriculture and lack of job opportunity.
- > PULL FACTORS better opportunities, presence of regular work, higher wages, higher education and health facilities, source of entertainment

Work and employment have remained the main cause for male migration (38 per cent) while it is only three per cent for the females. Contrary to this, about 65 per cent of females move out from their parental houses following their marriage.

# **CONSEQUENCES OF MIGRATION**

- Uneven distribution of population over the space
- ➤ Benefit both the places of migration

# **ECONOMIC CONSEQUENCES**

- Major benefit is remittance sent by migrants
- ➤ It is one of the source of foreign exchange
- ➤ In 2002 it was 11 billion dollars
- > Punjab, Kerala, Tamil Nadu receive significant amount in the form of foreign remittance
- Remittance used for food, repayment of debts, treatment, marriage, child education, agricultural inputs, construction of house.
- Migration from rural areas of Eastern Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Madhya Pradesh and Odisha to the rural areas of Punjab, Haryana, Western Uttar Pradesh accounted for the success of their Green revolution strategy for agricultural development.

# **DEMOGRAPHIC CONSEQUENCES**

- Redistribution of population
- ➤ Male Pop. Increases in cities
- Age and skilled pop. Migrate from rural to cities
- ➤ Imbalance in age sex composition

# SOCIAL CONSEQUENCES

- Migrants act as agents of social change
- New technology, family planning, girl's education is diffused
- ➤ Intermixing of different cultures
- It is positive change for national integrity but leads to unanimity
- > It creates social vacuum and sense of dejection

People may fall in antisocial activities

# **ENVIRONMENTAL CONSEQUENCES**

- Pressure on existing facilities
- > Formation of slums shanty colonies
- Over exploitation of natural resources leads to pollution
- > Depletion of ground water
- Sewage disposal has become major problem

# OTHER CONSEQUENCES

- > Change in women status
- Male selective migration in rural areas
- ➤ Women migration leads to autonomy but causes vulnerability to problems
- ➤ Loss of skilled persons in rural areas

# **Three Marks Questions**

Q1. Distinguish between push and pull factor:

Ans. Push factors

- 1. People migrate from rural to urban area due to unemployment in the village.
- 2. Cause due to over population and pressure on agricultural land.
- 3. Hamper and rural development.

#### **Pull factors**

- 1. People migrate from rural to urban area in search of better education, medical facilities and employment.
- 2. Cause due to weak infrastructure in the rural area.
- 3. Helps in urban development.
- Q2. What are the main causes of migration in India?

Ans. There are several causes of migration in India

- 1. Poverty
- 2. Lack of health
- 3. Lack of education facilitiesPush Factors (explain)

- Natural calamities- flood or drought etc.
   War
   Marriage
   Job opportunities
   High wages
   Education facilitiesPull Factor (Explain)

# **Five Marks Questions**

Q1. Explain economic, social and demographic consequences of migration. Write two points of each.

# Ans. Economic consequences:

10. Heath facilities

11. Entertainment

- 1. Plays important role in the development of industries and agricultural.
- 2. Development of slums is a negative impact of migration.
- 3. One of the source of foreign exchange.

# Social consequences:

- 1. Flow of new thought like family planning, female education and new technology from urban to rural area.
- 2. Mixing of two cultures together.

# Demographic consequences:

- 1. Redistribution of population in the country.
- 2. Affecting sex ratio of the state.

#### **CHAPTER - 3**

# HUMAN DEVELOPMENT CONCEPT OF HUMAN DEVELOPMENT

#### GIST OF THE LESSON:

"Human development is a process of enlarging the range of people's choices, increasing their opportunities for education health care income and empowerment and covering the full range of human choices from a sound physical environment to economic social and political freedom".

**HUMAN DEVELOPMENT REPORT**: Progressive democratization and increasing empowerment of people are seen as the minimum conditions for human development.

# **HUMAN DEVELOPMENT IN INDIA**

- ➤ India ranked 131 among 188 countries according to 2016 UNDP report
- HDI Value is 0.624
- India finds herself grouped with countries showing medium human development (UNDP 2016).
- Fall in medium group among the nations
- > Low score is due to

#### 1. Historical Factors

Colonization, imperialism, neo imperialism,

# 2. Socio Cultural Factors

Human rights violation, social discrimination, crimes, terrorism, war

# 3. Political Factors

Nature of state, form of government, level of empowerment,

# INDICATORS OF ECONOMIC ATTAINMENTS

- Access to all resources by all the people
- ➤ Prevalence of poverty. The percentage of persons below the poverty line in 2011-12 is 21.9% for the country
- Deprivation, malnutrition various types of prejudices
- Large scale regional disparities
- There are other factors like housing, access to public transport, air, quality and access to drinking water which also determine the standard of living
- Maharashtra, Punjab, Haryana, Gujarat, Delhi have high per capita income
- Low per capita income is found in Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Odisha, Madhya Pradesh, Assam, Jammu & Kashmir

#### INDICATORS OF HEALTHY LIFE

- ➤ Long life without ailment is called longivity
- Availability of pre, post health care facilities decrease the death rate
- > Old age health care, adequate nutrition and safety of individual are important measures for health
- Death rate decreased from 25.1 / 1000 to 6.5 /1000 in 2015
- ➤ IMR decreased from 148 to 37
- Life expectancy increased from 37.1 years to 66.9 years
- Decreased birth rate from 40.8 to 20.8
- > Decline in sex ratio in rural areas is alarming

#### INDICATORS OF SOCIAL EMPOWERMENT

- Access to knowledge about society and environment
- Literacy rate is the indicator of social development
- Literacy rate increased to 74.04%
- Literacy rate is Higher than the national average in many states
- ➤ Kerala has highest and Bihar has lowest literacy

# **HUMAN DEVELOPMENT INDEX IN INDIA**

- ➤ Kerala with 0.790 placed on the top
- ➤ Chhattisgarh with 0.358 placed at the bottom among 23 major states
- > Due to highest sex ratio and literacy Kerala place on the top
- > Due low sex ratio, per-capita income, and low literacy Orissa kept at the bottom

#### REASONS FOR LOW HDI

- Low Literacy Rate
- ➤ Low Economic Development
- Regional Disparities

# (SBM) Swachh Bharat Mission

-aims at a pollution-free environment.

making India open defecation-free and achieving 100 per cent scientific management of municipal solid waste, construction of individual household latrines (IHHL), community toilet (CT) seats and public toilet (PT) seats;

• Making provisions for the supply of clean energy fuel LPG to all households in rural India to reduce domestic pollution;

- Providing potable drinking water to every household to control the spread of water-borne diseases; and
- Promoting the use of non-conventional energy resources, like wind and solar energy.

#### POPULATION ENVIORNMENT AND DEVELOPMENT

- Social inequalities, discriminations deprivations displacement of people, abuse of human rights cause low HDI
- ➤ Methods to increase the HDI
  - i) Sustainable development
  - ii) Government Expenditure on public health and education
  - iii) Increase social and political freedom

# **Three Marks Questions**

Q1. Explain various indicators of human development.

Ans. United Nation's Development Programs has suggested the following indicators of human development.

- 1. Health
- 2. Education
- 3. Access to resources
- Q2. Explain the reasons for low human development index in few states of India.

Ans. Reasons –

- 1. Low rate of literacy in the sates like Bihar, M.P and Orissa.
- 2. Low economic development in the states like Orissa, Assam and Bihar etc.
- 3. Lack of effective implementations of govt. policies in these states.

#### **Five Marks Questions**

Q1. What is Human Development? Explain the indicators of Human Development in India.

Ans. Human development- it is the enhancement in the people's choice and improvement in their lives. The concept of human development was introduced by Dr. Mahbub-ul-haq in 1990.

Key Areas in Human Level	Indicators	
Access to resources	Purchasing power (in \$)	
2. Health	Life expectancy at birth	
3. Education	Adult literacy rate & gross Enrolment ratio.	

#### **CHAPTER - 4**

#### **HUMAN SETTLEMENTS**

#### GIST OF THE LESSON:

Settlement -Cluster of dwellings of any type or size where human beings live. They vary in size from hamlet to metropolitan cities, they may be small and large closed or spaced, and they may practice primary/secondary/tertiary activities.

# DIFFERENCE BETWEEN RURAL AND URBAN SETTLEMENTS

RURAL		RAL	URBAN	
	1.	Primary occupation	other than primary	
	2.	Provide raw material	process the raw	
			material	
	3.	Produce food	provide services	
	4.	Low income	high income	
	5.	Low density	high density	
	6.	Spaced	clustered	

# TYPES OF RURAL SETELEMENT:

#### **CLUSTERED SETTLEMENTS:**

- 1. Compact and closely built houses
- 2. Living area is different from surrounding farms
- 3. Recognizable pattern
- 4. Different shapes such as geometric rectangular, radial, linear,
- 5. Sometimes defense may cause shape of the settlement
- 6. Availability of water also decides the shape

# **SEMI-CLUSTERD SETTLEMENTS:**

- 1. Formed due to result from tendencyof clustered in restricted area of dispersed settlement
- 2. Segregation of large settlement may also cause
- 3. Some people may be forced to live separately from the main village
- 4. Dominance group live in the center of the village
- 5. People of lower strata live in out-skirts of the village

#### **HAMLETED SETTLEMENTS:**

- 1. Physically separated and located in different place having common name
- 2. They are locally called panna, para, palli, nagla, dhani

- 3. They are motivated by social and ethnic factors
- 4. Found in middle and lower Ganga plain, Chhattisgarh and lower valleys of the Himalayas.

# **DISPERSED STTLEMENTS:**

- 1. They are isolated huts or hamlets
- 2. Located on hills or agricultural lands
- 3. It is due to nature of terrain, and land resource, water
- 4. Found in Meghalaya, Uttaranchal, HP, and Kerala

# **URBAN SETTLEMENTS**

- 1. Compact and large in size
- 2. Non Agriculture, eco., admin activities
- 3. Exchange of goods and services
- 4. Directly linked with rural settlements

# **EVOLUTION OF CITIES IN DIFFERENT PERIODS**

#### 1. ANCIENT TOWNS:

- 1. Developed as religious and cultural towns.
- 2. Towns in India having historical background Over 2000 years old
- 3. Patna, Varanasi, Madurai, are examples

# 2. MEDIEVALTOWNS:

- 1. They are the headquarters of kingdoms
- 2. There are more than 100 towns
- 3. They are fort towns developed over ruined forts
- 4. Delhi, Hyderabad, Jaipur, Lucknow, Agra & Nagpur

# 3. MODERN TOWNS:

- 1. They are developed by British and other Europeans
- 2. Generally located on the coast
- 3. They were forts constructed by Europeans
- 4. Ex. Surat, Goa, Pondicherry, Mumabi, Madras, Calcutta

# Classification of Towns on the basis of Population Size

- 1. Urban centre with population of more than one lakh is called a city or Class I town
- 2. Cities accommodating population size between one to five million are called metropolitan cities.

3. More than five million are mega cities

Urban agglomeration-(i) a town and its adjoining urban outgrowths, (ii) two or more contiguous towns with or without their outgrowths, and (iii) a city and one or more adjoining towns with their outgrowths together forming a contiguous spread.

# **FUNCTIONAL CLASSIFICATION OF TOWNS**

- 1. Administrative towns: All capitals of states with national capital
- 2. Industrial towns: Mumbai. Salem, Coimbatore Modinagar, Jamshedpur
- 3. Transport towns: They may be ports primarily engaged in export and import activities Kandla, Cochin, vizag or hubs of inland transport, such as Agra, Dhulia, Mughalsarai, Itarsi, Katni, etc.
- 4. Commercial towns: Satna, Kolkata
- 5. Mining towns: Digboi, Raniguni, Jharia
- 6. Garrison cantonment towns: Ambala, Mhow. Jalandhar
- 7. Educational towns: Pilani, Aligarh, Varanasi
- 8. Religious cultural towns: Amritsar, Varanasi, Tirupati
- 9. Tourist towns: Shimla, Mussori, Nainital

#### **Smart Cities Mission**

- 1.To promote cities that provide core infrastructure, a clean and sustainable environment and give a decent quality of life to its citizens
- 2.Making areas less vulnerable to disasters, using fewer resources and providing cheaper services.

# Short answer question (3 marks each)

- 1. Name the types of rural settlements. What are the factors responsible for the settlement patterns in different physical environment?
- Ans: 1. Clustered settlements.
  - 2. Semi clustered settlements
  - 3. Helmeted settlements
  - 4. Dispersed Settlements

Factors affecting patterns of rural settlements on:

a) Nature of Terrain

- b) Altitude
- c) climate
- d) Availability of water

# 2. Distinguish between rural and urban settlements.

#### Ans: Rural Settlement:

- 1. Primary activities are main occupation in these settlements and 75% population is engaged in primary occupation.
- 2. Population sizes are low in these settlements.
- 3. Rural people are less dynamic and social relations are deep.

#### Urban settlement:

- 1. Non agricultural work is the main occupation in these settlements and 75% population is engaged in these activities.
- 2. Population Size is large in these settlements
- 3. Urban people are dynamic and their social relations are formal and complex.

# Long answer question (5 marks each)

1. Write three differences between clustered and dispersed settlement of India.

# Ans: Clustered Settlement:

- 1. These settlements are found in fertile plains.
- 2. Houses are close to each other and their size is small.
- 3. Sometime people live in compact villages due to security or defense reasons

#### Dispersed settlement:

- 1. These are found in hilly regions or desert areas.
- 2. Settlements are neat and clean with drainage arrangements.
- 3. Houses are big and are located at gaps.
- 2. Classify Town and cities on the basis of population size.

Ans: 1. Population is more than one lakh is called a city.

- 2. Population is less than one lakh is called town.
- 3. Cities accommodating population between one to five million are called metropolitan cities.
- 4. Population more than five million are mega cities.
- 3. Discuss the factors that determine the type of rural settlement.

- Ans. 1) **Physical factor:** relief, altitude, drainage, water table, climate and soil play an important role in determining the type of settlement.
  - 2. **Cultural Factor:** ethnic and cultural factor such as tribal, caste, or communal identity is also important in determining the layout of rural settlement.
  - 3. **Historical factor:** the villagers preferred to live in compact settlement in order to defend against the invaders.

#### **CHAPTER - 5**

# LAND RESOURCESAND AGRICULTUE GIST OF THE LESSON:

#### dist of the Lesson.

- LANDUSE CATEGORIES
- 1. Forests
- 2. Land put to non-agricultural use
- 3. Barren and waste land
- 4. Area under permanent pastures
- 5. Areaunder miscellaneous tree crops
- 6. Culturally waste land
- 7. Current fallow land
- 8. Fallow other than current fallow
- 9. Net sown area

#### LAND USE CHANGES IN INDIA THREE TYPES OF CHANGES

- I. Size of economy: (measured in terms of value for all the goods and services produced in the economy) grow over time; change in income level, marginal lands will become useful
- II. Composition of the economy: the secondary and tertiary grew much faster than primary activities especially agriculture
- III. The contribution of agricultural activities reduces over time

The share of Aggriculture is declined. No. of people fed by Aggriculture is increasing

# **INCREASE IN THREE CATEGORIES**

- 1. Forest
- 2. Area under non agricultural use
- 3. Current fallow land
- 4. Net sown area

Four areas declined

- 1. Barren and waste land
- 2. Cultivable waste land
- 3. Area under pastures & tree crops
- 4. Fallow lands.

# **COMMON PROPERTY RESOURCES**

I. The CPRs are used by common purpose / society owned by state ii.

Provide fodder for livestock fuel for the house holds

- iii. Produce minor forest products such as fruits, nuts, fiber, and medicinal plants
- iv. Every member has right to access agricultural land use in India
  - 1. Contribution of land in agricultural use is more important
  - 2. Lack of access to land leads to poverty
  - 3. Productivity depends on quality of land
  - 4. Land ownership has social value in rural areas

# TOTAL CULTIVABLE LAND = NET SWOWN AREA+FALLOW LAND + CULTURABLE WASTE LAND

- 1. Since there is no extra land available only the high yielding varieties can increase the productivity
- 2. Number of times the land can be increased by providing irrigation Crop intensity can be raised

#### **CROPPING SEASONS**

SEASON	PERIOD	Major Crops Cultivated Northern States	Major Crops Cultivated Southern States
KHARIF	JUNE-SEP	Rice, cotton, millets, ground nut	Rice, Maize, Ragi Jowar, Groundnut
RABI	OCT-NOV	Wheat, gram, rice, maize, millets	Rice, Maize, Ragi Jowar, Groundnut
ZAID	APRIL-JUNE	Vegtables, fruits	Rice, Vegetables, Fodder

# STRATEGY OF DEVELOPMENT

Govt. of India took steps to increase the production

i. Switching over from cash crops to food grains ii.

Increase crop intensity

- iii. Increasing cultivated area
- iv. Improvement of irrigation
- v. Intensive agricultural district programme and intensive agricultural area programme were launched
- vi. Useof HYV seeds, fertilizers, irrigation, pesticides
- vii. Introduction of GREEN REVOLUTION

# viii. Large agriculture inputs

#### GROWTH OF AGRICULTURAL OUTPUT AND TECHNOLOGY

- 1. Production and yield increased (wheat, rice, oilseeds, sugarcane, tea pulses, cattle, milk, and ground nut)
- 2. Expansion of irrigated area.
- 3. Use of HYV seeds
- 4. Useof modern agricultural technology
- 5. Increased consumption of chemical fertilizers

# **Green Revolution**

Achievements of Green Revolution:

- 1. There is a remarkable increase in the farm production and productivity.
- 2. The country has become self-sufficient in good grain production.
- 3. The income of farmers has increased and their quality of life has also improved.
- 4. Production of wheat rose six times or 562%
- 5. There was three-fold rise in the production of rice.
- 6. The supply of raw material to industries like sugarcane, cotton etc. recorded a remarkable increase.
- 7. The food security helped the nation to peruse other policies to raise its prestige in the commodity of nations.
- 8. The increase in the level of income made the villages more active in other spheres of life of the people.
- 9. Great variety came in agricultural products and consequently the price did not increase much.
- 10. The changes came in the thinking process of farmers.

#### PROBLEMS OF INDIAN AGRICULTURE

- 1. Uneven and unreliable rainfall
- 2. Low productivity
- 3. Povertyof the farmers

- 4. Lack of land reforms
- 5. Fragmentation of land holdings
- 6. Lack of commercialization
- 7. Vast underemployment
- 8. Degradation of cultivable land.
- 9. Illiteracy

# Short answer question (3 marks each)

7. What is the difference between dry land and wetland farming?

#### Ans: **Dry land farming:**

- 1. Dryland farming located in the area of less than 75cm rain fall
- 2. Drought resistant crops are grown
- 3. Millets, maizefodder crops
- 4. Practice rain water harvesting

#### Wetland farming:

- 1. Found in areas of high rainfall zones
- 2. Water intensive crops such as rice, sugarcane, jute are grown
- 2. Describe the condition of growth, production and major area of cultivation of rice in India.

Ans: RICE is a crop of tropical reasons

Temperature: 20 to 27 degree centigrade.

Rainfall: 75 to 200 cm

Soil: Alluvial

Cheap and skilled labour: large no of labour required Production area: middle plain, coastal plain, Himalaya foot hill, Punjab, Haryana

3. Describe three main achievements of the green Revolution in India.

Ans: i) It has led to a substantial increase in production and productivity of food grains.

- ii) Import of food grains declined from.
- 10. 3 million tons to 2.4 million tones in 1983. There is no import of food grains in 2000-01.

The cropped area, use of HYVs, the yield per hectare use of irrigation and fertilizers has increased.

# Long answer question (5 marks each)

- 9 Discuss the problems of Indian agriculture?
- Ans: 1. Uneven and unreliable rainfall
  - 2. Low productivity
  - 3. Poverty of the farmers
  - 4. Lack of landreforms
  - 5. Fragmentation of land holdings
  - 6. Lack of commercialization
  - 7. Vast under employment
  - 8. Degradation of cultivableland
  - 9. Illiteracy among farmers.

Q10-What geographical condition is required to grow wheat?

Ans: i) Temperature: 10 to 20 degree Celsius and 100 frost free period

ii) Rainfall: need 50 to 100 cm of rainfall

iii) Irrigation: Irrigation is required

iv) Soil: heavy loamy or light clay is the best

v) Production in India: Punjab, Haryana

vi) India is the second largest wheatproducing country after green revolution.

#### **CHAPTER - 6**

# WATER RESOURCES

#### GIST OF THE LESSON:

#### WATER RESOURCES IN INDIA

- 1. India accounts 2.45% of world surface area
- 2. 4% of world water resource
- 3. 16% of population
- 4. Total water available from precipitations 4000 cubic km.
- 5. Surface water and replenish able wateris 1869 cubic km
- 6. 60% only useful is about 1122 cu.km

#### SURFACE WATER RESOURFCES

- 1. There are four major sources of surface water
- 2. Rivers, lakes, ponds, tanks
- 3. 10,360 rivers are present with more than 1.6 km length each
- 4. Mean annual rainfall is about 1869 cubic km
- 5. 60% only usable it is equal to 1122 cubic.km

#### GROUND WATER RESOURCES

- 1. Total replenishable ground water is 432 cu.km
- 2. 46% available from Ganga and Brahmaputra river basins
- 3. Level of utilization of ground water is high in NW and south India
- 4. Low in Chhatisgarh or Kerala
- 5. Moderate in Gujarat, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar
- 6. Usage of surface water resources Agriculture=89% domestic=9% industrial 2%
- 7. Usage of ground water resources Agriculture=92% domestic=3% industrial 5%

# **REASONS - DEMAND OF WATER FOR IRRIGATION**

- 1. Uneven distribution of rainfall
- 2. Seasonal rainfall
- 3. High temperature causes more evaporation

- 4. To grow water intensive crops
- 5. To increase production
- 6. For crops in dry season
- 7. To introduce green revolution

# **DETERIORATION OF WATER QUALITY**

- 1. Per-capita availability of water is dwindling day by day
- 2. Increasing population
- 3. Increase in the standard of living
- 4. Ground water pollution
- 5. Urban waste and industrial waste is left in to the rivers
- 6. Cultural activities produce more wastage in to the rivers
- 7. The Yamuna river is the most polluted river in the country between Delhi and Etawah.

# WATER CONSERVATION AND MANAGEMENT

- 1. Adopt laws and acts to conserve water
- 2. Use water saving methods and technology
- 3. Prevent water pollution
- 4. Water shed development
- 5. Rain water harvesting
- 6. Water recycling and reuse

#### PREVENTION OF WATER POLLUTION

- 1. The central pollution control board along with state pollution control boards should monitor the pollution
- 2. Frequent supervision is essential
- 3. The other rivers such as Sabarmati, Gomati, Kali, Adayar, Vaigai, also to monitor for pollution
- 4. Monitoring the industries located along the river banks.

#### RECYCLE AND REUSE OF WATER

- 1. Low quality of water can be used for industries
- 2. Water from domestic centers to be used for garden
- 3. Water used for cleaning vehicles also used for gardening.

#### WATER SHED MANAGEMENT

- 1. Efficient management of surface and ground water and conservation is called water shed development.
- 2. Prevention of run off, storage and recharge of groundwater through percolation tanks, recharge wells
- 3. Bring balance between natural availability and utility
- 4. It depends on community participation
- 6. NERU-MEERU by Andhra Pradesh govt. ARVARY PANI SANSAD by govt of Rajasthan
- 7. Construction of checkdams, plantation,
- 8. Making compulsory to the public to make rainwater harvesting plant before constructing building.
- 9. Haryali is a watershed development project sponsored by the Central Government which aims at enabling the rural population to conserve water for drinking, irrigation, fisheries and afforestation

# **RAIN WATER HARVESTING**

- 1 It is the method of capturing and storing rainwater, for various uses.
- 2. Refilled the groundwater wells
- 3. It improves water quality
- 4. Reduces the water pollution
- 5. Dilution of salts takes place in the water
- 6. Rain water harvesting is practiced in different areas by different tribes
- 7. Harvesting through service wells, recharge wells kund or tanka
- 8. It increases ground water level

#### NATIONALWATER POLICY

- 1. Multipurpose projects should include drinking water
- 2. Provide drinking water to all animals and men is first priority
- 3. Regulation of exploitation of ground water
- 4. Both ground and surface water quality should be regularly
- 5. Increase the efficacy use of water
- 6. Awareness of importance of water to be imparted to the common people
- 7. Conservation of water to be realized by the all people

# CASE STUDY RALEGAN SIDDHI

1. It is an example for watershed development

- 2. Retired army personnel Anna Hazare realized the importance of watershed and convinced the public
- 3. Voluntary participation took place and developed the watershed
- 4. The status of village is changed
- 5. Dependencystarted declining
- 6. Tarunmandal was formed to control pollution
- 7. Controlled grazing started
- 8. Dry crops weresstarted growing
- 9. Community leaders took control of the village
- 10. People cooperated with each other
- 11. It is the model village in India

# **Short Answer type question (3 mark each)**

Q. 1. What are the aim of rain water harvesting?

Ans: 1. It is the method of capturing and storing rainwater, for various uses.

- 2. Refilled the groundwater wells
- 3. It improves water quality
- 4. Reduces the waterpollution
- 5. Dilution of salts takes placein the water
- 6. Rainwater harvesting is practiced in different areas by different tribes
- 7. Harvesting through service wells, recharge wells kund or tanka
- 8. It increases ground water level
- Q. 2. How can we conserve the water resources?

Ans: 1. Adopt laws and acts to conserve water

- 2. Usewater saving methods and technology
- 3. Prevent water pollution
- 4. Watershed development
- 5. Rainwater harvesting
- 6. Water recycling and reuse

Q. 3 Why is the demand of water for irrigation increasing day by day in India?

Ans: 1. Irrigation is needed due to variable and uncertain rainfall in India.

- 2. Drought prone areas like N-W India and Deccan plateau needs more irrigation.
- 3. Dry seasons of winter and summer need irrigation for agriculture.

# Long answer question (5marks each)

- Q. 1 Describe the main features of India's National Water Policy.
- Ans: 1. Multipurpose projects should include drinking water
  - 2. Provide drinking water to all animals and manis first priority
  - 3. Regulation of exploitation of ground water.
  - 4. Both ground and surface water quality should be regularly monitored for quality.
  - 5. Increase the efficiency in the useofwater
  - 6. Awareness of importance of waterto be imparted to the common people
  - 7. Conservation of water to be done by all the people.
- Q. 2 What is watershed management? Do you think it can play an important role in sustainable development?

Ans: Watershed management basically refers to the efficient management and conservation of surface and groundwater resources.

It involves prevention of runoff and storage and recharge of groundwater through various methods like percolation tanks recharge wells, etc.

- 1) Rain water harvesting
- 2) Re cycling of water
- 3) Conjunctive use of water for sustaining water supply in long run.
- 4) Prevention of water pollution
- 5) Saving water in household work
- 6) Re use of water
- 7) Creates awareness among people about water conservation
- Q. 3 Discuss different methods of water conservation.

Ans: i) Construction of Dams on rivers

- ii) Recycling of polluted Water
- iv) New Technique of Irrigation
- v) Drought Resistant Crops
- vi) Use of drip irrigation
- vii) Inter basin Transfer of water
- viii) Rainwater harvesting

# CHAPTER - 7 MINERAL AND ENERGY RESOURCES

#### GIST OF THE LESSON:

A mineral is a natural substance of organic /inorganic origin with definite chemical and physical properties.

#### TYPES OF MINERALS-METALLIC MINERALS AND NON-METALLIC MINERALS

- A. Ferrous: Iron manganese- provide a strong base for the development of metallurgical industries.
- B. Non Ferrous; Copper Bauxite Non Metallic Minerals
- A. Fuel mineral: Coal, Petroleum,
- B. Other Non-metallic: Lime Stone

# AGENCIES INVOLVED IN THE EXPLORATION OF MINERALS

- 1. Geological survey of India
- 2. Oil and Natural Gas Commission
- 3. Mineral Exploration Corporation Ltd.
- 4. National Mineral Development Corporation
- 5. Indian Bureau of Mines
- 6. Bharat Gold Mines
- 7. Hindustan Copper Ltd
- 8. National Aluminum Ltd
- 9. Dept. of Mining and Geology

# DISTRIBUTION OF MINERALS

- 1. Metallic minerals occur in peninsular region
- 2. Coal reserves are found in valleys of Mahanadi, Godavari, Sone, Damodar
- 3. Petroleum occurin sedimentary deposits of Assam and Gujarat
- 4. New reserves are discovered in Krishna Godavari Cauvery basins
- 5. Most of the minerals occur in east of line linking Mangalore and Kanpur
- 6. These are located in three broad belts-

# i)NORTH -EASTERN PLATEAU REGION

- 1. Cover West Bengal, Orissa, Chhattisgarh
- 2. Minerals areiron coal manganese, bauxite, mica

# ii) SOUTH -WESTERN PLATEAU REGION

- 1. Covers Karnataka, Goa, Kerala & Tamilnadu
- 2. Minerals are ferrous metals, limestone, bauxite, ironore, and manganese coal deposits monazite in Kerala iron ore in Goa

# iii) NORTH -WESTERN REGION

- 1. Cover Rajasthan, & Gujarat.
  - 2. Minerals areironcopper, zinc, sandstone, petrouleum etc.

# FERROUS MINERALS: IRON, MANGANESE, CHROMITE

1. **Iron ore:** largest iron ore in Asia, Halmatite and Magnetite are the two types of iron ores, it has great demand in the international market

95% is located in Orissa, Jharkhand, Chhatisgarh, Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh, Tamilnadu

**Odhisa:**Sundergarh, Mayurbhanj Jhar mining centers; Gurumahishani, SulaipetBadampaharKiruburuBonai

Jharkhand-Noamundi and Gua located in west and east Singhbhum

Chhatisgarh- DurgDantewareBailadila Dalli Rajhara

Karnataka: Sandur, Hospet, Bababudan hills, Chitradurg, **Maharshtra**-Chandrapur, Bhandara, Ratnagiri

Andhra Pradesh: Kurnool, Karimnagar Cuddapab&Anantapur

#### 2. MANGANESE

Used in steel making, Odisha is the leading producer. Bonai, Kedujhar, Sundergarh,.Gangpur, Koraput ,Kalahandi,Bolangir are important producers.

KARNATAKA:Dharwar, BallaryBelgavi,N.CanaraChikkmagaluru.

Maharashtra: Nagpur, Bahandara, Ratnagiri.

#### 3. **BAUXITE**

It is the ore of aluminum

Aluminum is used to make construction, aircraft, utensils, electrical items.

> Largest Producer of Bauxite-

ODISHA: Kalahindi, Sampalpur are leading producers

Lohardaga in Jharkhand, Kolaba, Thane Ratnagiri of MAHARASTRA Bhavnagar, Jamnagar of GUJARAT.

#### COPPER USED IN ELECTRICAL INDUSTRY

Distribution: Singhbhumin Jharkhand, Balaghat of MP, Jhunjhunu, Alwar of Rajasthan. Minor producers are Hasan of Karnataka, Agnigundala of Andra Pradesh.

#### NON METALLIC MINERALS

**MICA**: used in electrical & Electronic Industries.

Found in Hazaribagh of Jharkhand, Nellore of Andhra Pradesh, Jaipur& Bhilwara of Rajasthan.

# COAL, PETROLEUM NATURAL GAS, NUCLEAR MINERALS

**COAL**: There are three types of coal

- 1. Anthracite: found in Himalayan region
- 2. Bituminous: About 80 per cent of the coal deposits in India is of bituminous type and is of non-cooking grade and located in Gondwana coal field in DamodarValley,Sone Valley Jharia, Raniganj, Mahanadi Valley Chanda Wardha
- 3.The most important coal mining centres are Singrauli in Madhya Pradesh (part of Singrauli coal field lies in Uttar Pradesh),
- 4. Korba in Chhattisgarh, Talcher and Rampur in Odisha,
- 5. Chanda-Wardha, Kamptee and Bander in Maharashtra and
- 6. Singareni in Telangana and Pandur in Andhra Pradesh.

#### PETROLEUM-

- 1.It is an essential source of energy for all internal combustion engines in automobiles, railways and aircraft.
- 2.Its numerous by-products -such as fertiliser, synthetic rubber, synthetic fibre, medicines, vaseline, lubricants, wax, soap and cosmetics
- 3.In Assam, Digboi, Naharkatiya and Moran
- 4. Gujarat Ankaleshwar, Kalol, Mehsana, Nawagam, Kosamba and Lunej
- 5.Mumbai High-MAHARASHTRA,Oil and natural gas have been found in exploratory wells in Krishna-Godavari and Kaveri basin on the east coast.

6. There are two types of refineries in India: (a) field-based and (b) market-based. Digboi is an example of field-based and Barauni is an example of market-based refinery.

#### WIND ENERGY

- 1. Pollution free
- 2. inexaustible
- 3. Simple machinery
- 4. Wind rotate turbines to produce electricity
- 5. Permanent wind systems are used to rotate turbines

Rajasthan, Gujarat, Maharashtra and Karnataka havefavourable conditions.

#### TIDAL WAVE ENERGY

Energy produced with the help of tides and waves of sea west coast is more suitable

#### **GEOTHERMAL ENERGY**

- 1. Hot water is used to rotate turbines
- 2. Ground water is heated and gushed out and can be used for generating electricity
- 3. Hot springs and geysers are used to generate electricity
- 4. Manikaran in Himachal Pradesh

# **BIO ENERGY**

- 1. Energy generated from agricultural, animal waste, urban waste, it can be converted in to electrical energy
- 3. Develop rural areas
- 4. Clean the environment
- 5. Cheap and easily available in rural areas
- 6. One such project converting municipal waste into energy is Okhla in Delhi.

#### CONSERVATION OF MINERAL RESOURCES

- 1. Use non-conventional resources
- Recycling of metals

- 3. Reuse of energy resources
- 4. Use alternative resources
- 5. Use scrap metals, Export of strategic and scarce minerals must be reduced.

# **Short Answer type question (3 mark each)**

Q.1 What is conservation of minerals? Why is conservation of minerals necessary?

Ans. Use of minerals in a scientific manner to avoid their wastage is called conservation of minerals.

# Conservation of minerals is necessary:

i)For the regular advancement of civilization ii) Minerals are exhaustible resources. They are needed for our future generation.

#### Methods to conserve minerals-

- i) Use alternatives in place of minerals like plastic doors in place of iron and steel.
- ii) Recycling.
- Q.2 Distinguish between metallic and non metallic minerals.

#### Ans. Metallic minerals:

- 1. Those mineral from which we get minerals.
- 2. Can be drawn into wires and sheets after melting.
- 3. Examples: Iron ore, copper and tin etc

#### **Non-metallic minerals:**

- 1. Those minerals from which we do not get metals.
- 2. Can notdrawn into wires and sheets.

Example: coal and marble

Q.3 Difference between conventional and non conventional source of energy.

# Ans: Conventional source of energy:

- 1. These are exhaustible resources.
- 2. They pollute the environment.
- 3. Examples: coal and petroleum.

# Non-conventional source of energy:

- 1. These are inexaustible resources.
- 2. They do not pollute the environment.
- 3. Example: solar energy and wind energy.
- Q.4 Why is conservation of minerals necessary?
- Ans. 1) Minerals are unevenly distributed over space.
  - 2) There is inverse relationship in quality and quantity of minerals i.e. good quality, Minerals are less in quantity as compare to quality minerals.
  - 3) All minerals are exhaustible overtime. These take long develop geologically and they cannot be replenished immediately the time of need.

# Long answer questions (5 mark each)

Q.1 Write a detailed note on the petroleum resource of India.

Ans. Petroleum is an essential source of energy for all internal combustion engines in automobiles, railways and aircraft. Its numerous by products are processed in petro chemical industries such as fertilizers, synthetic rubber, synthetic fiber, medicines, Vaseline's, lubricants wax, soap and cosmetics.

Crude petroleum occurs in sedimentary rocks of the tertiary period. Oil exploration, and production was systematically taken up after the oil and natural gas commission was set up in 1956. Till then the digboi in Assam was the only oil producing region.

#### **Distribution:**

Assam – Digboi, Naharkatiya, Moran

Gujarat - Ankaleshwar, kalol, Mehsana, Nawagam

Maharastra- Mumbai high

# **CHAPTER - 8**

# MANUFACTURING INDUSTRIES

# GIST OF THE LESSON:

## **CLASSIFICATION OF INDUSTRIES**

# A. On the basis of size, capital investment Labour Force

1. Large 2. Medium

3. small 4. Cottage

# B. On the basis of Ownership

1. Public(government/state controlled) 2. Private

3. Joint 4. coperative

#### C. On the basis of Product

1. Basic goods industries 2. Capital goods industries

3. Intermediate goods industries 4. Consumer goods industries

# D. On the basis of Raw Materials

1. Agro based 2. Forest based

3. Mineral based 4. Industrial raw material based processed

# E. Nature of Product

1. Metallurgical 2. Mechanical

3. Chemical 4. Textile

5. Food processing 6. Electricity generation

7. Electronics 8. Communication

# LOCATION OFINDUSTRIES LOCATIONALFACTORS

1. Raw materials 2. Power

3. Transport 4. Labour

Historical factors
 Industrial policy

#### MAJOR INDUSTRIES IRON STEEL INDUSTRIES

RAW MATERIALS: iron ore, coking coal limestone, dolomite, manganese, and fireclay

# TYPES OF IRON AND STEEL INDUSTRIES

1. Integrated steel plants 2. Mini steel plants

# 3. Rolling mills

# 4. Ancillary industries

#### INTEGRATED STEEL PLANTS TISCO

- 250 km away from Kolkata
- Water- Subarnarekha Kharki Rivers
- Iron ore Naomundi and Badampahar
- Coal– JodaminesfromOrissa
- Coking coal

   Jharia

# **ROURKELA**

- Collaboration with Germany
- Located nearby raw materials
- Coal-Jharia iron ore-Sundargarh
- Power-Hirakud water –Koel

#### **BHILAI**

- Russian collaboration
- Iron ore–Dalli Rajhara
- Coal-Korba&Kargali
- Water-Tandula Dam
- Power –Korba

# THE COTTON TEXTILE INDUSTRY

- 1. One of the traditional industries in India
- 2. India is famous for muslin, calicos chintz

# ADVANTAGES/AVAILABLE FOR COTTON TEXTILE INDUSTRIES

- 1. Cotton cloth is most comfortable in tropical climate
- 2. Large area under cotton cultivation
- 3. Availability of abundant skilled labour

#### ADVANTAGES OF COTTON TEXTILES IN MUMBAI

- 1. Close to cotton growing areas
- 2. Mumbai port facility
- 3. Availability of capital for industries
- 4. Availability of cheap labour
- 5. Machines can be imported

#### SECTORS OF COTTON TEXTILES

- Organized sector
- Un organized sector
- It includes power looms and hand looms
- Organized sector production declined from 81% to 6%
- Decentralized sector produces 59% power looms and 19% hand looms

#### PROBLEMS OF COTTON MILLS

- 1. Competition from synthetic fiber
- 2. High cost of production
- 3. Erratic power supply
- 4. Frequent strikes, lockouts
- 5. Climatic changes decrease production

#### **SUGAR INDUSTRY**

- 1. Most important industry
- 2. India is the largest producer of sugarcane
- 3. 8% of sugar production in India
- 4. Khandasari, jaggary also produced in India
- 5. Provide employment to 4 lakh persons
- 6. It is a seasonal industry
- 7. The number of sugar factories rose to 662 in 2010-11. Maharashtra leading producer followed by Uttar Pradesh

# **DIMENSIONS OF NEW INDUSTIRAL POLICY(1991)**

- 1. Industrial licensing has been can celled except
  - 1. Security
- 2. Strategic
- 3. Environmental concerns
- 2. Public sectors reduced from 17 to 3
- 3. Atomic energy & railways kept under government
- 4. Govt. offered share holdings to financial institutions, public workers
- 5. No private permission is required to invest in de-licensing sector
- 6. FDI is the supplement of domestic investment

- 7. FDI provide technological innovation
- 8. Access to global managerial skills optimum use of nature man resources
- 9. Liberalized to attract MNS and private sector
- 10. Mining and communications high way construction thrown to private

<u>Globalization</u> means integrating national economy with world economy (1) abolition of industrial licensing, (2) free entry to foreign technology, (3) foreign investment policy, (4) access to capital market, (5) open trade, (6) abolition of phased manufacturing programme, and (7) liberalised industrial location programme. The policy has three main dimensions: liberalisation, privatisation and globalisation.

# **INDUSTRIAL REGIONS**

#### CRITERIA FOR IDENTIFYING INDUSTRIAL REGIONS

- 1. Number of industrial units
- 2. Number of industrial workers
- 3. Quantity of power used
- 4. Output
- 5. Value added by manufacturing

## **MUMBAI PUNE REGION**

- 1. Extended from Mumbai to Sholapur
- 2. Connect Kolaba Ahmednagar, SataraSangle Jalgaon

# **FAVOURABLEFACTORS**

- 1. Cotton hinterland
- 2. Moist climate
- 3. Opening of Suez Canal
- 4. Mumbai port facility
- 5. Hydel power from Western Ghats
- 6. Opening of Mumbai high
- 7. Nuclear power plant at Tarapur
- 8. Industries:

Cotton textile, engineering goods, petroleum refining, petrochemicals, leather, synthetic and plastic goods, drugs, fertilisers, electrical, shipbuilding, electronics

# **Short Answer question (3 mark each)**

- Q. 1 What are the types of industries in India on the basis of their ownership? Ans.
- (i) Public sector industries (ii) Private sector industries
  - (iii) Cooperative sector industries.
- Q. 2 Describe the causes of Concentration of Cotton textile industries in the cities of Mumbai and Ahmedabad.
- Ans. 1. Humid climate
  - 2. Raw material
  - 3. Nearest to market
  - 4. Skilled labour
  - 5. Banking Facilities
  - 6. Import and export Facility etc.
  - 7. Water supply
- Q. 3 Explain any three major objectives of New Industrial policy of India, which was announced in 1991.
- Ans. 1. Industrial licensing has been cancelled except 1. Security, 2. Strategic, 3.environmental concerns
  - 2. Public sectors reduced from 17 to 3
  - 3. Atomic energy & railways kept under government

# Long Answer question (5 mark each)

Q. 1 What is the role of Iron and steel industry in the economic development of India?

Ans. The development of the iron and steel industry opened the doorstorapid industrial Development in India.

The Indian iron and steel industry consist of large integrated steel plants as well as mini SteelMills: + Integrated steel Plants.

- (1) TISCO-Tata Iron and steel plant at Jamshedpur in Jharkhand.
- (2) TISCO-Indian Iron & steel Company at Hirapur, Kultiand Burnpur in West Bengal.
- (3) VISL-Visvesvaraiya Iron and steel Works Ltd. at Bhadravati in Karnataka.
- (4) Rourkela steel plant in Sundargarh district of Orissa. (Setup in Collaboration Germany)
- (5) Bhilai steel Plant in Durg district of Chhattisgarh (Setup in Collaboration with Russia)
- (6) Durgapur steel plant in West Bengal. (Setup in Collaboration with UK)

- (7) Bokaro steel plant in Jharkhand. (Setup in Collaboration with Russia)
- (8) Vizag steel plant at Vishakhapatnam in Andhra Pradesh (It is First port based steel plant)
- (9) Vijaynagar steel Plant at Hospet in Kamataka
- (10) Salem steel plant in Tamil Nadu.

A part from those major steel plants, there are more than 206 steel units located in different parts of the country.

Q. 2 Explain the major industrial region and their Characteristics of India.

Ans There are 8 major industrial regions in India:

Ans: (1) Mumbai-Pune Industrial Region-

Major Industries - Cotton textile, Chemical Industry.

(2) HugliIndustrialRegion-

Major Industries-Jute Industry, Hindustan Motors Ltd. Diesel engine factory

(3) Bangalore - Chennai Industrial Region-

Major Industries -Heavy Engineering Industry, Machine tools, Telephone, Bharat Electronics.

(4) Gujarat Industrial Region-

Major Industries - Cotton textile Industry, Petro - Chemical Industry.

(5) ChotanagpurRegion-

Major Industries - Heavy Metal Surgical Industry, Iron & steel Plants.

(6) Vishakhapatnam - Guntur Region

Major Industries - Ship building Industry, Petro - Chemical Industry.

(7) Gurgaon - Delhi - Meerut Region

Major Industries - Electronics, Light Engineering & Electrical goods.

(8) Kollam - Tiruvanantapuram Region

## **CHAPTER - 9**

#### PLANNING AND SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT IN INDIA

#### GIST OF THE LESSON:

Planning is the process of thinking formulation of a scheme of programme and implementation of a set of actions to achieve some goal

On 1 January 2015, the NITI Aayog was formed with the objective of involving the states in economic policy making for India for providing strategic and technical advice to the Central and State governments.

#### THERE ARE TWO APPROACHES

- 1. Sectoral planning
- 2. Regional planning
- 3. India started five year plans and annual plans & target area planning
- 1. These plans take care of economically back ward areas, based on resources
- 2. Govt. introduced the following programmes under target area planning
  - 1. Command area development Programme
  - 2. Drought prone area development Programme
  - 3. Desert area development programme
  - 4. Hill area development programme
  - 5. The small farmers development agency
  - 6. Marginal farmers development Agency

### HILL AREA DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME

- 1. Started during 5<sup>th</sup> plan
- 2. Covered 15 district of Uttar Pradesh, West Bengal & Tamil Nadu
- 3. National committeeon the development of backward areain 1981 recommended this programme
- 4. Selected the area above 600 mts.
- 5. Covered tribal regions
- 6. <u>Objectives</u> are to develop: horticulture, plantation, animal husbandry, and poultry forestry small scale and village industries

#### DROUGHT PRONE AREA DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME

1. Started during 4<sup>th</sup> plan

2. <u>Objectives</u>: employment, creating productive assets, starting labor

Intensive works, irrigation projects, land development. Programme. Afforestation, grassland dev. Electricity, road, market, credit facility.

- 3. Integrated watershed development Programme.
- 4. Restoration of ecological balance between water, soil, plants and animals
- 5. Covered 67 districts

#### CASE STUDY TRIBAL DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME

- 1. Bharmaur Tribal region located in Chamba district. of Himachal Pradesh
- 2. Inhabited by Gaddi tribes
- 3. They practice transhumance
- 4. Total area is 1818 sq.km, 1500 to 3700 mts altitude
- 5. Ravi and its tributaries drain this region
- 6. There are four physiographic regions 1. Holi 2. Khani 3. Kugti 4. Tundah
- 7. Harsh climate, low resource base, fragile environment
- 8. According to the 2011 census, the total population of Bharmaur sub-division was 39,113 i.e., 21 persons per sq km.
- 9. Most economically backward
- 10. Socio economic deprivation
- 11. Objectives: transport and communication Agriculture. Allied activities. Socio economic Services, education, health, potable water, electricity

# SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT

Norwegian Prime Minister Gro Harlem Brundtland gave the report (also known as Brundtland Report) entitled 'Our Common Future' in 1987. Sustainable development as a "development that meets the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs."

# INDIRA GANDHI CANAL COMMAND AREA- RAJASTHAN CANAL

- 1. One of the largest canal system in India
- 2. Started in 1948 launched on 31/3/1958
- 3. Started from Harike barrage in Punjab run parallel to the Pakistan border
- 4. The total length is 9060 km 19.63 lakh hectare irrigation 70% flow 30% lift system
- 5. Started in two stages: Stage-I -1960 and stage-II 1980

- 6. Cover Ganganagar, Hanuman Garh, Bikanir, Jaisalmer, Barmer, Jodhpur, Nagpur, Churu Districts
- 7. Left side lift system and right side flow system of irrigation
- 8. Objectives achieved: irrigation, pasture development, afforestation reduce wind erosion, reduce siltation. Development of per-capita income, increase in food production, increase cultivated area, changein cropping system
- 9. Problems: siltation, waterlogging, salinity

#### STEPS TAKEN TO SOLVE THE PROBLEMS

- 1. Strict implementation of water management policy
- 2. Protective irrigation
- 3. Extensive irrigation of crops and pasture lands
- 4. No water intensive crops
- 5. Lining of water courses
- 6. Leveling of warabandhi
- 7. Reclamation of water logging areas
- 8. Afforestation, shelter belts,
- 9. Adequate financial support

# SHORT ANSWER QUESTION (3 MARK EACH)

Q. 1 What do you understand by planning? How is it a non going process?

Ans. The process involving the sequence of actions which are designed to solve problems in future is called planning.

Problems which are chosen for planning get changing from time to time. But these problems always remain economic and social. There is also a difference in level and period of planning from time to time. All types of planning have a sequence of action.

Q. 2 Where were hill are development programme started?

Ans. In all 15 districts were included like Nilgiri of Tamilnadu, Kachhar hills of Assam, Darjeeling of West Bengal Mikir hills and Uttarakhand.

Q. 3 Describe the drought prone area development programme and it's main objective.

Ans. This programme was started in Fourth Five year plan to provide employmentin drought prone area.

Objectives:-

(i) To reduce the effect of drought

- (ii) To initiate irrigation projects
- (iii) Afforestation and pasture development
- (iv) Restoration of ecological balance
- (v) Develop basic infrastructure like road, market, electricity etc.
- Q. 4- Define the Concept of Sustainable development?

Ans. The concept of Sustainable development refersto development in such away that it does not harm the environment and meets with the requirements of present and future generations.

# CHAPTER - 10 TRANSPORT AND COMMUNICATION

# GIST OF THE LESSON:

# CLASSIFICATION OF TRANSPORT AND COMMUNICATION

#### **LAND**

- 1. Road
- 2. Railway
- 3. Pipe Lines

#### WATER

- 1. Inland
- 2. Oceanic

#### AIR

- 1. Domestic
- 2. International

# LAND TRANSPORT

# ROAD TRANSPORT

- Total road length is 42.66 lakh km
- ➤ 80% passengers, and 70% of freight are carried by roads
- ➤ Sher shah suri road connect Indus valley to Sone valley
- ➤ It is renamed as grand trunk road
- ➤ At present it connects Amritsar to Kolkata

# **CLASSIFICATION OF ROADS**

- I NATIONAL HIGHWAYS
- Constructed and maintained by central govt./NHAI
- ➤ Meant for inter state transport
- Movement of defense men and material
- Connect state capitals
- Total length 100475 km in 2015-16
- Accounts 2% of road length

- > Carry 40% of traffic
- Golden quadrilateral

5846 km, 4/6/lane. High density traffic, connect metro cities, time distance and cost distance decreased n-s corridor connect Srinagar to Kanyakumari (4076 km)

East west corridor connect Porbandar to Silchar (3640)

# STATE HIGH WAYS

- Constructed and maintained by statePWD
- Connect state capitals with Dist. Hqs.
- account for 4% of road length DISTRICT

#### **ROADS**

- > Connect Dist.,. HQ with other towns
- > account for 14% of road length

#### **RURAL ROADS**

- ➤ Connect rural areas
- > accounts 80% of road length
- > Regional variation in road density
- > Influenced by terrain and climate

#### OTHER ROADS

#### BORDER ROADS AND INTERNATIONAL HIGHWAYS

- > BRO was established in 1960
- ➤ Helps to develop economy
- > strengthen the defense
- > Improvements in connecting the strategic points
- ➤ It is a premier multifaceted construction agency
- ➤ Highest road way connects Manali –Leh with 4270 mts. altitude
- Maintain harmonious relation with neighboring countries

Highest road density is 387.24 / 100sq. km in Kerala lowest road density is 10.48 / 100 sq km in j&k It is high in northern plains and low in mountain Areas

#### FACTORS INFLUENCING ROAD WAYS

➤ Terrain 2. Climate, 3. Economic development. 4. Industries 5. Cities and towns

# **RAILWAYS**

- The first railway line started in 1853 between Bombay and thane
- ➤ It is the largest govt. Sector with the length of 66030 km
- ➤ It is divided into 16 zones
- 1. Northern –New Delhi 2. North Eastern Gorakhpur 3. NE Frontier Maligaon 4. N.WesternJaipur, 5.N.Central Allahabad 6.Western Church Gate Mumbai 7.W. Central Jabalpur 8. Central CST Mumbai 9. E.Central Hajipur 10. Eastern-Kol 11. S.Western Hubli 12. S.Central Seceuderabad 13. SE Central-bilaspur 14. Seastern-Kolkota 15. Southern- Chennai 16. East Coast-Bhubaneshwar Coal is transported in large volume by railways

RAILWAY GAUGES (In March 2016): broad gauge :1.676 mts. 60510 km, meter gauge: 1.000 mts. 3880 km narrow gauge -0.762mts & 0.610 mts. 2297 kms

#### RECENT DEVELOPMENTS IN RAILWAYS

- ➤ Conversion of meter and narrow gauges into broad gauge
- > Steam engines are replaced by diesel and electrical engines
- > Introduction of metro railways
- ➤ Use of CNG
- > Introduction of internet
- > Computerization of reservation
- > container services

# WATER TRANSPORT

#### **ADVANTAGES**

- > Cheapest means of transport
- ➤ Least consumption of energy
- > Suitable for heavy bulky goods
- ➤ No friction
- ➤ Eco friendly

#### FACTS ABOUT WATER TRANSPORT

- > There are two types of Inland water ways
- > Cheapest mode of transport
- > Competition from road ways and railways
- ➤ Water diversion from the rivers cause less navigable
- > Total 14500 km of navigable water ways
- ➤ Account 1% of transport

- ➤ It consists of rivers, canals, backwaters creeks
- > 5685 km of navigable rivers are available
- ≥ 2000 km actually used
- > Canals are controlled by inland water way authority

10. There are five inland waterways in India with 10 more to be upgraded.

- 1. National waterway No.1 Allahabad to Haldia 1620 km most important waterway, up to Patna mechanized boats and up to Hardwar manual boats
  - It is divided in to three segments 1. Haldia to Farakka 560 km 2. Farakka to Patna 460 km 3. Patna to Allahabad 600 km
- 2. National Waterway –No 2- Sadiya to Dubri 891 km steamers can travel up to Dibrugarh
- 3. National Waterway No -3- Kottapuram to Kollam 205 km it includes 168 km west coast canal and Udyogamandal canal
- 4. NW 4- Specified streches of Godavari and Krishna rivers along with Kakinada Puducherry stretch of canals (1078 km)
- 5. NW 5- Specified stretches of river Brahmani along with Matai river, delta channels of Mahanadi and Brahmani rivers and East Coast canals (588km).

Back waters of Kerala also important waterways

# **OCEAN ROUTES**

India has coastline about 7517 km there are 12 major ports and 185 minor ports

95 % of India foreign trade and 70 % of value in trade takes place through sea ways

#### AIR TRANSPORT

# **ADVANTAGES**

- Fastest means of transport
- > Connect remote areas
- no need to maintain routes and construct
- Suitable for emergency times
- ➤ All continents are connected by air ways
- Suitable for difficult terrain
- Reduce travel time
- Maintained by airport authority
- ➤ It maintains 126 minor airports 11 international air ports and 86 domestic airports
- > 29 civil defense enclaves in defense service also maintained by the authority

#### There are three divisions

- Air India: provide international air services, Connects all continents
- ➤ Delhi and Mumbai air ports accounts for 52% of air service Indian airlines connect Indian subcontinent

It is the part of air India Pawan Hans helicopter services serves in north eastern states

#### **PIPELINES**

#### **ADVANTAGES**

- Most convenient and efficient mode of transporting liquids and gases over long distance
- least consumption of energy
- > Suitable for mountain areas and sea bottom
- Asia's cross country pipe line is constructed between Naharkatia oil field and Barauni oil refinery with the length of 1157 km, it was extended up to Kanpur in 1966
- > Other pipe lines are Ankaleswar to Koyali, Mumbai High to Koyali Hazira-Vijaipur-Jagdishpur
- ➤ Salaiya to Mathura 1256 km
- Numaligarh to Siliguri 660km

#### **COMMUNICATION**

It is divided into personal-mobile mass radio, TV Personal communication has become most important. At present user can contact with the customer directly Fastest means of communication Communication revolution came into world through internet Mass communication consists of radio, TV and satellite communication Satellite communication is the recent development most useful at the time of emergency. When all other communications are failed it is the only communication which can be used.

# **Three Marks Questions**

- Q1. Why is road transport gaining more importance over rail transport? Explain.
- Ans. 1. Construction of roads is cheaper.
  - 2. Roads can be constructed even on hilly surface.
  - 3. Roads provide door to door service while railway do not.
- Q2. Which are the different railway gauges in India?

Ans. There are three railway gauges –

- 1. Broad Gauge- distance between two lines is 1.676 mtr.
- 2. Meter Gauge- distance between two lines is -1.00 mtr.
- 3. Narrow Gauge -distance between two lines is –0.762 mtr.

# **Five Marks Questions**

Q1. Explain the main features of pipeline transport also give two example. Ans.

Useful for transporting gas and liquid material

- 1. It can be laid down in any type of surface and climate
- 2. Cost of transport is reduced
- 3. Help in quick supply of petroleum products
- 4. No wastage of petroleum due to leakage
- 5. Environment friendly as no pollution is caused
- 6. E.g. HVJ pipeline, Jamngar-Loni, LPG pipeline.

# CHAPTER - 11 INTERNATIONAL TRADE

#### GIST OF THE LESSON:

#### CHANGES IN INTERNATIONAL TRADE

- 1. There is a change in volume that is increased but the value of import is more than export
- > Increase in trade deficit
- It is due to rise of petroleum price

#### CHANGES IN COMPOSITION

- The share of agriculture and allied products has declined
- ➤ The share of petroleum products has increased
- The share of ore-minerals and manufactured goods have largely remained constant
- Increasing in India's refining capacity also responsible for importing petroleum
- > Declining in traditional goods is due to tough international competition
- There is a great decline in coffee, spices, pulses, tea
- Increase in floriculture products, marine products, sugar and fresh fruits
- Manufacturing alone accounted for 73.6% of total export in 2016-17
- Engineering goods have shown growth in export
- > China and east Asian countries are our competitors
- > Gems and jewellery contributed a large share in foreign trade

# CHANGING PATTERN OF INDIA'S IMPORT

- 1. Earlier our import was food grains, capital goods, machinery
- 2. After 1970 import of food grains discontinued
- 3. Fertilizers and petroleum took major part
- 4. Machine, edible oil and chemicals also present
- 5. capital goods has steadily increasing
- ➤ Food products reduced
- Pearls and precious stones gold and silver take major part

# **DIRECTION OF TRADE- Import-**

Europe-Rs .403972 Crore.

Africa-Rs.193327 Crore

North America-Rs.195332 Crore

Latin America – Rs.115762 Crore

Asia and Oceania- Rs.1544520 Crore

USA is the largest trading partner of India

India export with UK, Belgium, Germany, Japan, Switzerland and Hongkong the UAE, China Singapore.

Sea Ports are called International Gate Ways of International Trade

- > India is covered by three side with water
- ➤ Longest coast line (7516.5 km)
- > water is the cheapest transport
- West coast has more sea ports than east coast
- Most of the international trade takes place through sea routes
- Major ports are controlled by central govt. Minor ports are under different state governments
- There are 12 major and 185 minor ports
- Most of the ports are equipped with modern facilities

# **INDIAN SEA PORTS**

- ➤ KANDLA: located at Gulf of KACHCH, Developed to decrease pressure on Mumbai port, Special facilities are available for petroleum. The offshore Vadinar is developed to reduce pressure on this port
- MUMBAI: natural harbor, biggest port, suitable to import goods from middle east countries, 20 km long and 10 km width country s largest oil terminal

# JAWAHARLAL NEHRU PORT:

- Located at Nhava Seva,
- Largest after completion,
- Developed to decrease burden on Mumbai port

#### MARMAGOA PORT:

- ➤ Located at the estuary of Zuari river
- Natural harbor
- > Iron ore is exported to Japan
- ➤ Konkan railway brought large hinter land

# NEW MANGALORE PORT

- Located in Karnataka coast
- > Specialized to expert of iron ore
- Also exports fertilizers, tea, wood pulp yarn

# **KOCHCHI PORT**

- Located at the Vembanadkayal
- Popularly known as the 'Queen of the Arabian Sea'
- Natural harbor
- Close to Suez Canal

# **KOLKATA PORT**

- Located on the Hugli river bank
- Located 128 km away from sea coast
- Developed by British
- Paradip and Haldia decreased the pressure
- > Silt accumulation is the problem
- ➤ Large hinter land
- > Extend port facilities to other countries

# HALDIA PORT

- Located 105 down stream of Hugli
- Developed to burden on Kolkata
- ➤ Handles iron ore , cargo fertilizers, jute products

# PARADIP PORT

- Located on Mahanadi delta
- ➤ 100 km from Cuttack
- Deepest harbor
- ➤ Handle large vessels
- Developed to iron ore

#### VISHAKAPATNAM PORT

- ➤ Land locked harbour
- > Connected to the sea through channel
- An outer harbor is developed to help this port
- ➤ It handles iron ore, petroleum cargo

# **CHENNAI PORT**

Oldest port developed by British

- > Artificial harbor
- Not suitable for large ships

#### **ENNORE PORT**

- Newly developed port in Tamil Nadu
- Located 25 km north of Chennai
- Developed to decrease burden on Chennai port

# **TUTICORIN PORT**

- Newly developed port in Chennai
- It handles variety of cargo: coal, salt, edible oils, petroleum & food grains
- > Developed to decrease pressure on Chennai port

# AIR TRANSPORT

- > Fastest
- > Connect remote areas
- > Suitable for long distance
- ➤ Help at the time of disasters
- ➤ 12 International and 112 Domestic Ports

Ahmedabad, Amritsar, Banglore, Chennai, Delhi, Goa, Guwati, Hyderabad, Kochchi, Kolkata, Mumbai, Trivendrum

# **Three Marks Question**

- O1. What are the causes of trade imbalance of India?
- Ans. 1. High price at world level
  - 2. Devaluation of Indian rupee at international trade
  - 3. Slow progress in production in India.
  - 4. Increasing domestic demand in India.
- Q2. Why are ports called as gateways of trade in India?
- Ans. (i) Import and export by ports only.
  - (ii) Can reach upto sea through ports only.
  - (iii) Ports provide link with other countries.
- Q3. Why does India edible oil and pulses inspite of being on agriculturally rich country?
- Ans. 1. Demand due to excessive population
  - 2. Most of the cultivated land under food ex.
  - 3. Low per hectare productivity of pulses.

- 4. Less profitable as compare to other crops.
- 5. Risky farming due to high vulnerability.

# Five marks question.

Q1. Write main characteristics of India's foreign Trade. Ans:

Main characteristics of Indian Trade

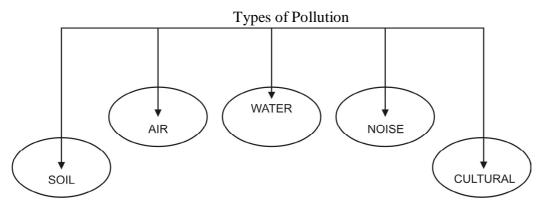
- 1. Mostly trade through sea
- 2. Lack of foreign trade.
- 3. Reduction in per capita trade.
- 4. Result of trade and increase of price
- 5. Negative trade balance-
- 6. Characteristics of export trade
  - (i) Maximum of traditional articles.
  - (ii) More export of engineering and prepared articles from industries.
  - (iii) More customer (Buyer) of India's exported goods
  - (iv) Change the direction of trade
- 7. Characteristics of import trade-
  - (i) Maximum of heavy machineries in trade.
  - (ii) Increase of manufactured of articles.
  - (iii) Reduction in food grains and raw materials.

# CHAPTER - 12 GEOGRAPHICAL PERSPECTIVE ON SELECTED ISSUES AND PROBLEMS

# GIST OF THE LESSON:

<u>Pollution</u>: Harmful change for animals and plants in the environment is called *pollution*. Different components of environment have a definite composition. When some other element is added to these components their basic composition is altered. This change is called pollution.

**ENVIRONMENT:** The external conditions surrounding an organisms or a community are its environment. The environment has two components- one is natural (physical) environment and the other is human environment.



Types and sources of pollution

Pollution Types	Pollution involved	Sources of pollution
Air pollution	Oxides of sulphur (so2, so3), oxides of nitrogen, carbon mcnoxide, hydrocarbon, ammonia, lead, aldehydes asbestos and beryllium.	Combustion of coal, petrol and diesel, industrial processes, solid waste disposal, sewage disposal etc.
Water Pollution	Odour, dissolved and suspended solids, ammonia and urea, nitrate and nitrites, chloride, fluoride, carbonates, oil and grease, insecticide and pesticide residue, tannin, coliform MPM (bacterial count) sulphates and sulphates, heavy metals e.glead, arsenic, mercury, manganese, etc., radioactive substances.	Sewage disposal, urban runoff, toxic effluents from industries, run off over cultivated lands and nuclear power plants.

Soil pollution	Human and animal excreta viruses and bacteria, garbage and vectors therein, pesticides and fertilizer- residue alkalinity, fluorides, radio- active substances.	Improper human activities, disposal of untreated industrial waste, use of pesticides and fertilizers.
Noise pollution	High level of noise above tolerance level.	Aircrafts, automobiles, trains, industrial processing and advertising media.

**AIR POLLUTION:** Addition of any undesired smell, solid, gas or dust to air and any unnecessary interference in living conditions due to this is called *Air pollution*.

# Harmful effects of air pollution

- Effect on weather and climate: Chemical pollution of air is one of the causes of depletion of ozone in the atmosphere. The ozone layer saves us from the harmful ultra-violet rays of the sun. Higher amount of carbon dioxide and some other gases leads to a rise in temperature also. This has created the danger of melting of ice sheets and glaciers in polar and mountainous region.
- ➤ Effect on the health of people: Air pollution can lead to several ailments affecting lungs, skin, eyes and throat. High levels of air pollution, especially when poisonous gases are present in the atmosphere, can kill thousands of people. About 2,500 people died in Bhopal city in 1984 due to mixing of poisonous gas MIC in the air thousands became handicapped for life.
- Effects on animals and plants: Air pollutants have damaging effects on the leaves and trunks of the trees and plants by retarding their growth.
- Effects on structures like buildings: The air pollutants like sulphur dioxide, smoke, sand and dust particles cause damage to various materials. Buildings turn black due to air pollution. Acid rain creates small hollows in the marble slabs. The colour and shine of world famous Taj Mahal is badly affected by air pollution.

# **Control of air pollution**

- Use of lead- free petrol
- Complete checkon burning of fossil fuels
- Use of more fuel- efficient engines
- use of filters in smoke stacks
- Locating factories away from dense settlements
- Use of pollution-free energy resources
- High smoke stacks
- \* Restricting use of harmful chemicals

# WATER POLLUTION

Such changes in the quality of water due to human or natural activities that render water un-suitable for human consumption or for other organisms, agriculture, fisheries and entertainment.

# **CAUSES OF WATER POLLUTION**

- Chemicals used in agriculture
- Detergents
- urban waste
- Religious and cultural gatherings along river banks
- Inadequate sewage systems and toilets
- half-burnt and un-burnt dead bodies
- Natural factor
- Drilling in sea for petroleum
- Nuclear waste

**Quality Criteria for fresh water:** The Central Pollution Control Board of India has divided water into five groups:

- I. The first group of water can be consumed without purification, just by removing germs.
- II. Water of the second group is considered safe for bathing.
- III. Water of this category can be consumed after purifying it through methods and making it germs-free.
- IV. The fourth group of water is suitable for fisheries. It is suitable for wildlife also.
- V. The fifth group of water can be used for irrigation, industrial air conditioning and controlled disposal of waste.

On the basis of above criteria, the water of most Indian rivers belongs to the (iii), (iv) and (v) groups. Clean drinkable wateris becoming rare in Indianrivers. According to the some studies "seventy per cent of total available water in India has been polluted".

Some extremely polluted stretches in the Ganga and Yamuna River.

River and state	Polluted stretches	Nature of pollution	Main Polluters
Ganga (Uttar Pradesh, Bihar and West Bengal)	<ul> <li>a) Downstream of Kanpur</li> <li>b) Downstream of Varanasi</li> <li>c) Farraka Barrage to Allahabad</li> </ul>	<ol> <li>Industrial pollution from towns like Kanpur</li> <li>Domestic wastes from urban centers</li> <li>Dumping of carcasses in the river</li> </ol>	Cities of Kanpur, Allahabad, Varanasi, Patna and Kolkata release domestic waste into the river.
Yamuna (Uttar Pradesh)	a) Delhi to confluence with Chambalb) Mathura and Agra	<ol> <li>Extraction of water by Haryana and Uttar</li> <li>Pradesh for irrigation.</li> <li>Agricultural run-off resulting in high levels of micro-pollutants in the Yamuna.</li> <li>Domestic and industrial waste of Delhi flowing into the river</li> </ol>	Delhi dumping its domestic waste.

# **Harmful Effects of Water Pollution**

- ✓ Spread of diseases
- ✓ loss of plants and animals
- ✓ loss of soil fertility
- ✓ Eutrophication

# **Control of Water Pollution**

- ✓ Management of garbage
- ✓ Sewer systems and toilets
- ✓ Electric crematoriums
- ✓ Treatment of industrial and Urban waste water
- ✓ Implementation of laws

# **NamamiGangeProgramme**

objectives:

- developing sewerage treatment systems in towns,
- monitoring of industrial effluents,
- development of river front,

- afforestation along the bank of increase biodiversity,
- cleaning of the river surface,
- development of 'Ganga Grams' in Uttarakhand, UP, Bihar, Jharkhand and West Bengal, and
- creating public awareness to avoid adding pollutants into the river even in the form of rituals.

# **NOISE POLLUTION**

An undesirable sound which is unbearable, irritating and affects the human brain is known as *Noise Pollution*.

The sound of five **decibels** (it is the SI unit of measuring noise) is low, up to 25 **decibel** normal and the sound which is more than 25 **decibel**, is called *Noise*.

<u>Harmful Effects of Noise Pollution</u>: People headache, deafness, irritation, and difficulty in talking and listening to others due to noise. This disturbs the concentration and working capacity of people and leads to discomfort, fatigue and lack of sleep. Too much noise can lead to health problems like high blood pressure.

#### Control on Noise Pollution:

- Checking the sources of noise.
- There is a need to enact laws and strictly implement them.
- Ban should be imposed on use of old and noisy machines and equipment's.
- Reducing the bursting of crackers on festivals like Diwali.

<u>Urban waste disposal</u>: Overcrowding, congestion, inadequate facilities, poor sanitary conditions, significant quality of solid waste pieces of metals, polythene bags, broken glass ware plastic containers ashes garbage and CDs make solid waste.

# Sources of urban waste:

- Household establishments: thrown in public lands, private contractor sites.
- Industrial establishments: thrown in low lying public grounds.

#### Effects of solid waste:

- Health hazard due to obnoxious smell, flies and rodents.
- Disease like typhoid, diphtheria, diarrhea, malaria, cholera
- They are spitted through rain water
- Industrial waste dumping in the rivers cause water pollution Ex. Ganga, Yamuna.

#### **RURAL- URBAN MIGRATION:**

#### Reasons:

- 1. Demand for labour in urban areas.
- 2. Low job opportunities in rural areas.

3. Development of rural areas.

# Effects:

- 1. Lack of male population in rural area.
- 2. Over crowd in metropolitan cities.
- 3. Pressure on infrastructure of cities.
- 4. Cause of slum in metros.

# PROBLEMS OF SLUM AREAS:

- Least choice
- Dilapidated houses
- poor hygienic conditions
- Poor ventilation
- Lack of drinking water, light, toilet facilities
- Overcrowded, narrow streets, low paid workers
- Prone to diseases, alcoholism, vandalism, apathy, social exclusion

**LAND DEGRADATION:** Land degradation is generally understood either as a temporary or a permanent decline in productive capacity of the land.

#### Causes:

- Caused by natural agents: Gullies, ravenous land, deserted, coastal sands, barren rocky areas, steep sloping land, and glacial areas.
- Caused by natural as well as human factors: Waterlogged and marshy areas, land affected by salinity and alkalinity, land with or without scrub.
- Caused by human action: Pressure on agriculture due to population, degraded shifting cultivated areas, degraded land under plantation crops, degraded forests, degraded pastures, mining and industrial waste lands.

# Three marks questions.

- Q1. Write any six problems of slums of metropolitan cities in India-
- Ans. (i)Lack of proper accommodation, light and sanitation facilities
  - (ii)Lack of safety measures from fire and earthquake.
  - (iii) Over crowded with population.
  - (iv) Lack of medical facilities.
  - (v) Narrow streets and lack of proper ventilation.
  - (vi) Spread of epidemics in slums.
- Q2. Write four problems regarding urban waste disposal in India.

- Ans. (i) Lack of proper place for dumping of urban waste material.
  - (ii) Throwing of industrial waste into rivers, which in turn increases water pollution.
  - (iii) Soil pollution is caused due to uncontrolled chemical seepage in the ground.
  - (iv) Fear of spreading diseases due to air pollution and bad smell from urban waste.
- Q3. Mention major problems associated with urban waste disposal in India.

# Ans. Explain

- 1.Growing population
- 2. Slow administrative action
- 3. Growing consumerism.
- 4. Casual attitude towards cleanliness.
- 5. Unscientific disposal Management.
- 6. Problem of Water pollution.
- 7. Loss of health

# Five marks questions

Q1. Describe the problem of Slums in India.

# Ans. Explain:

- 1. Dilapidated houses
- 2. Poor hygienic conditions
- 3. Lack of light & drinking water facilities.
- 4. Lack of toilet facilities.
- 5. Poor ventilation
- 6. Low paid and high risk works.
- 7. Lack of proper education
- 8. Malnutrition and Under Nutrition
- 9. Vulnerable to crime & drug abuse.
- 10 Vulnerable to social exclusion

# SECTION-7 CHAPTER -WISE MCQ QUESTION BOOK-II(INDIA PEOPLE AND ECONOMY)

# CH - 01 - INDIA POPULATION: - DISTRIBUTION, DENSITY, GROWTH & COMPOSITION

	- VI - INDIA I OF CLATION DISTRIBUTION, DENSITY, GROWTH & COMPOSITION	
1. Wh	tich state of India has highest population?	
(i)	U.P.	
(ii)	Bihar	
(iii)	Punjab	
(iv)	Kerala	
2. Wh	rich state of India is highest population density?	
(i)	Bihar	
(ii)	Assam	
(iii)	Mizoram	
(iv)	Tamil nadu	
3. Which state has lowest sex ratio?		
(i)	Punjab	
(ii)	Haryana	
(iii)	Jharkhand	
(iv)	Bihar	
4. Wh	rich state has lowest literacy rate?	
(i)	Bihar	
(ii)	Odhisha	
(iii)	Rajasthan	
(iv)	Jharkhand	
5. How many stages/phases of population growth?		
(i)	One	
(ii)	Two	

(iii)

Three

(iv)	Four	
6. Which state has the highest % of rural population?		
(i)	U.P.	
(ii)	Himachal Pradesh	
(iii)	Bihar	
(iv)	Sikkim	
7. Firs	t census of India was held in which year?	
(i)	1872	
(ii)	1881	
(iii)	1885	
(iv)	1891	
8. Hov	w many scheduled languages in our constitution?	
(i)	20	
(ii)	21	
(iii)	22	
(iv)	23	
9. Wh	at is the present annual growth rate of India?	
(i)	1.56%	
(ii)	1.76%	
(iii)	2.03%	
(iv)	2.13%	
10. A	worker is known as main worker, who works atleast:-	
(i)	More than 183 days	
(ii)	185 days	
(iii)	Less than 183 days	
(iv)	200 days	
CH.02-MIGRATION:- TYPES,CAUSES&CONSEQUENCES		
1. What are the causes of migration?		
(i)	Push factors	
(ii)	Pull factors	

(iii)	Both		
(iv)	None		
2. How	2. How many streams of migration?		
(i)	1		
(ii)	2		
(iii)	3		
(iv)	4		
3. Whi	ch of the following cities, who receives highest no. of migrants?		
(i)	Mumbai		
(ii)	New Delhi		
(iii)	Calcutta		
(iv)	Chennai		
4. Which states of India receives highest amount of remittances from migrators?			
(i)	Kerala		
(ii)	Punjab		
(iii)	Haryana		
(iv)	Bihar		
5. In w	hich sector do the immigrants mostly work?		
(i)	Agriculture		
(ii)	Industry		
(iii)	Services		
(iv)	Others		
6. Do y	you know the legislation for migrant in Europe, USA and Australia?		
(i)	Yes		
(ii)	No		
(iii)	Partially		
(iv)	Not at all		
7. Which state of India, receives maximum migrants?			
(i)	Maharashtra		
(ii)	Punjab		

(iv)	Gujrat
8. Wha	at are the main reason behind male migration in India from rural to urban areas?
(i)	Employment
(ii)	Marriage
(iii)	Education
(iv)	All
9. Wha	at are the main reason behind female migration in India?
(i)	Marriage
(ii)	Education
(iii)	Health
(iv)	Job
10.Wh	nat are the causes of migration?
(i)	Poverty
(ii)	Education
(iii)	Health
(iv)	All
CH.03	3-HUMAN DEVELOPMENT
1.The	state having the highest literacy rate in India:-
(i)	Kerala
(ii)	Tamil nadu
(iii)	Bihar
(iv)	Rajasthan
2. The	
	state having the lowest literacy rate in India:-
(i)	state having the lowest literacy rate in India:- Bihar
(i) (ii)	
	Bihar
(ii)	Bihar Odhisha
(ii) (iii) (iv)	Bihar Odhisha Rajasthan
(ii) (iii) (iv)	Bihar Odhisha Rajasthan U.P.
(ii) (iii) (iv) 3. Whi	Bihar Odhisha Rajasthan U.P. ich state has the highest HDI?

(iii)

Haryana

(ii)	Kerala	
(iii)	Gujarat	
(iv)	Madhya Pradesh	
4.Hum	nan development concern with:-	
(i)	Quantitative development	
(ii)	Qualitative development	
(iii)	Both(i)&(ii)	
(iv)	None	
5. Wha	at is the full form of UNDP?	
(i)	United nations development project	
(ii)	United national development project	
(iii)	United nations development programme	
(iv)	None	
6. Human development is:-		
(i)	Always negative	
(ii)	Always positive	
(iii)	Both	
(iv)	None of the above	
7. Whi	ich agency is responsible for preparation and publishing the list of human development of the	
world'	world's countries.	
(i)	WHO	
(ii)	UNESCO	
(iii)	UNICEF	
(iv)	UNDP	
8.Wha	t is the literacy rate of India on the basis of census 2011?	
(i)	74.1%	
(ii)	66%	
(iii)	92%	
(iv)	82%	

9. Nar	ne the country having highest human development index:-		
(i)	Norway		
(ii)	India		
(iii)	France		
(iv)	Japan		
10. W	10. Which state has the highest per capita income in India?		
(i)	Punjab		
(ii)	Bihar		
(iii)	Odhisha		
(iv)	Goa		
CH.04	I-HUMAN SETTLEMENTS		
1 Wł	nich of following is the functional classification of an urban settlement		
a)	Administrative		
b)	Industrial.		
c)	Mining Town		
d)	all of the above		
2) Th	e Population size of Metropolitian city is		
a)	less than 1 million		
b)	1-5 million		
c)	more than 5 million		
d)	none of the above		
3) Urb	panization is expressed in terms of		
a) A	Absolute number.		
b) ]	Ratio		
c)	Percentage		
d) 1	none of the above		
4)Towns are classified on the basis of Evolution as			
a)	Ancient Towns		
b)	Modern Towns		
c)	Medieval Towns		

d) All of the above							
5) The type of settlement is locally known as Para, pani, Nagal and dhani	is						
Clustered							
b) Semi Clustered	Semi Clustered						
c) Hamleted							
d) Dispersed							
6) Which of the following is Garrison Town							
a) Agra							
b) Jharia							
c) Kolkata							
d) Varanasi							
7) What is the Population size of Class 1 town or city							
a) 5000-9999							
b) 10000-19999							
c) 100000 & more							
d) less than 5000							
8) Which of the following is a Mega city?							
a) Delhi							
b) Mumbai							
c) Bengaluru							
d) All the above							
9)Which of the following is Medieval town-							
a) Agra							
b) Varanasi							
c) Jamshedpur							
d) Chandigarh							
10) Which of the following is an educational Town							
a) Varanasi							
b) Aligarh							
c) Pilani							

#### d) All the above

#### **CHAPTER 5-LAND RESOURCES AND AGRICULTURE**

# [1] What is the formula of cropping intensity in percent?

- (a) GCA/NSAx100
- (b) NSA/GCAx100
- (c) GCA/NSAx1000
- (d) GCA/NSA

#### [2] Barani cultivation is related to:

- (a) Irrigated crops
- (b) dry farming
- (c) Rain fed
- (d) Aerophonics

# [3] Current fallow land is land which is left uncultivated for period of:

- (a) More than 5 years
- (b) 3 to 5 years
- (c) 2 to 5 years
- (d) 1 or less than 1 year

# [4] Which department is meant for measuring the geographical area of administrative units:

- (a) Agricultural Department
- (b) Forest department
- (c) Revenue department
- (d) Survey of India

# [5] Which of the following is not a kharif crop?

- (a) Rice
- (b) Rapeseeds
- (c) Cotton
- (d) Maize

# [6] Rabi crops are grown in during the months of:

- (a) June-September
- (b) April-June

(c)	October-March
(d)	Throughout the year
[7] An	nan, Aus & Boro are types of which crop?
(a)	Oilseeds
(b)	Wheat
(c)	Tea
(d)	Rice
[8] Ri	ce research institute of India is situated at:
(a)	Cuttack
(b)	Kolkata
(c)	Chennai
(d)	Dehradun
[9] W	hich one of the crops is fiber crop?
(a)	Sugarcane
<b>(b)</b>	Cotton
(c)	Tea
(d)	Rubber
[10] R	obusta, Arabica and Liberica are varieties of :
(a)	Jute
(b)	Rubber
<b>(c)</b>	Coffee
(d)	Tea
[11] G	reen revolution is related to production of?
(a)	Milk
(b)	Poultry products
(c)	Fishery
(d)	Food grains
CHAI	PTER 6 -WATER RESOURCES
[1] W	hich sector of economy is responsible for maximum exploitation of ground water resources?
(a)	Domestic

(b)	Industrial		
<b>(c)</b>	Agriculture		
(d)	None of these		
[2] W	hich group of states is highly affected by concentration of Arsenic:		
(a)	Rajasthan-Maharashtra		
(b)	Punjab-Haryana		
<b>(c)</b>	West Bengal-Bihar		
(d)	Madhya Pradesh-Chhattisgarh		
[3] W	hich group of states is highly affected by concentration of fluoride in ground water		
resou	rces:		
(a)	Uttar Pradesh		
(b)	Bihar-West Bengal		
<b>(c)</b>	Rajasthan-Maharashtra		
(d)	Punjab-Haryana		
[4] Environment Protection Act was implemented in:			
(a)	1974		
<b>(b)</b>	1986		
(c)	1988		
(d)	1997		
[5] Ha	ryali program is related to development of:		
(a)	Forest Cover		
(b)	Watershed Development		
(c)	Soil Conservation		
(d)	Food Grain Production		
[6] W	hich one is not related to watershed development project:		
(a)	Haryali		
(b)	Neeru-Meeru		
(c)	ArwariPaniSansad		
(d)	Van Mahotsava		
[7] W	hich method is not related to rainwater harvesting?		

<ul> <li>(a) Green Belt</li> <li>(b) Check dam</li> <li>(c) Recharge well</li> <li>(d) Eris</li> <li>[8] In which year national water policy was implemented?</li> <li>(a) 2002</li> <li>(b) 2008</li> <li>(c) 2015</li> <li>(d) 2005</li> <li>[9] Which one of the following type describes water as a resource?</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>(c) Recharge well</li> <li>(d) Eris</li> <li>[8] In which year national water policy was implemented?</li> <li>(a) 2002</li> <li>(b) 2008</li> <li>(c) 2015</li> <li>(d) 2005</li> <li>[9] Which one of the following type describes water as a resource?</li> </ul>
(d) Eris  [8] In which year national water policy was implemented?  (a) 2002  (b) 2008  (c) 2015  (d) 2005  [9] Which one of the following type describes water as a resource?
<ul> <li>[8] In which year national water policy was implemented?</li> <li>(a) 2002</li> <li>(b) 2008</li> <li>(c) 2015</li> <li>(d) 2005</li> <li>[9] Which one of the following type describes water as a resource?</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>(a) 2002</li> <li>(b) 2008</li> <li>(c) 2015</li> <li>(d) 2005</li> <li>[9] Which one of the following type describes water as a resource?</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>(b) 2008</li> <li>(c) 2015</li> <li>(d) 2005</li> <li>[9] Which one of the following type describes water as a resource?</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>(c) 2015</li> <li>(d) 2005</li> <li>[9] Which one of the following type describes water as a resource?</li> </ul>
<ul><li>(d) 2005</li><li>[9] Which one of the following type describes water as a resource?</li></ul>
[9] Which one of the following type describes water as a resource?
- · · ·
(a) Abiotic
(b) Biotic
(c) Cyclic
(d) Non Renewable resource
[10] Neeru-Meeru program belongs to which state?
(a) Gujarat
(b) Rajasthan
(c) Punjab
(d) Andhra Pradesh
CHAPTER 7 -MINERAL AND ENERGY RESOURCES
[1] Which is the best quality of iron ore?
(a) Hematite
(b) Siderite
(c) Magnetite
(d) Limonite
[2] Singareni mines belong to which mineral?
(a) Iron
(b) Petrol
(c) Copper
(d) Coal

#### [3] What is full form of HVJ? (a) Hajira-Virganj-Jagdishpur Hajira-Vijaypur-Jagdishpur (b) (c) Hajira-Vijaypur-Jamnagar Haldia-Vishakhapatnam-Jodhpur (d) [4] Bhabha Atomic Research Centre is situated in? (a) Mathura (b) Bengaluru (c) **Tarapur** (d) Kota [5] Which one of these is not a renewable energy resource? (a) Wind energy (b) Geothermal Energy Solar Energy (c) (d) **Natural Gas** [6] Which of the following minerals is known as brown diamond? Mica (a) (b) Iron Manganese (c) (d) Lignite [7] Ankleshwar oilfield is situated in? (a) **Gujarat** (b) Assam Coastal Andhra (c) (d) Maharashtra [8] Bhilai steel plant was established in collaboration with which of the following nations? Russia (USSR) (a) Germany (b)

United Kingdom

**USA** 

(c)

(d)

#### [9] Which mineral is also known as 'liquid gold'? (a) Water **(b) Petroleum** (c) Coal (d) Mercury [10] Manikaran (Himachal Pradesh) is popular for production of (a) Solar Energy (b) Wind Energy **Geothermal Energy** (c) (d) Tidal Energy **CH. 8-MANUFACTURING INDUSTRIES** [1] Which one of the industry referred as Basic Industry? **Aluminum Industry** (a) **Iron and Steel Industry (b)** (c) Agro Industry **Chemical Industry** (d) [2] In which state Jamshedpur Iron and Steel industry situated? (a) West Bengal **(b) Jharkhand** (c) Bihar Orissa (d) [3] Which one of is not an example of Public Sector (a) **Airtel** Hindustan Aeronautical limited (b) Bhilai Iron Steel Plant (c) (d) **Indian Oil Corporation** [4] First cotton textile Industry was founded in.... Ahmedabad (a) **(b) Fort Glaster** Mumbai (c)

(d)	) Kanpur					
5. W	hich city is known as Manchester of North India?					
(a)	Kanpur					
(b)	Patna					
(c)	Lucknow					
(d)	Meerut					
6. W	hich is an example of Footloose Industry?					
(a)	Iron and Steel Industry					
(b)	Cotton textile Industry					
(c)	Cement Industry					
(d)	<b>Electronics Industry</b>					
7. W	hich is the largest producer of Sugar in India?					
(a)	Uttar Pradesh					
(b)	Maharashtra					
(c)	Andhra Pradesh					
(d)	(d) Tamil Nadu					
8. A	city also refer as Silicon City					
(a)	Mumbai					
(b)	Jaipur					
(c)	Bengaluru					
(d)	Lucknow					
9. W	hich one is not a feature of New Industrial Policy, 1991?					
(a)	Abolition of industrial licensing					
(b)	Foreign investment policy					
(d)	Free entry to foreign technology					
<b>(d)</b>	Maximum interference of Govt.					
10. V	Vhich is an example of Pure Raw Material?					
(a)	Iron ore					
(b)	Bauxite					
(c)	Cotton					

#### (d) Crude oil

# CHAPTER 9-PLANNING AND SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT

1. Planning includes which of the follo	Iowing
---	--------

- A process of thinking
- B formulation of schemes or programmes
- C implementation of set of actions to achieve goal
- D all of above

#### 2. Sectoral planning does not include

- A Irrigation
- B Transport
- C Hill area
- D Infrastructure

# 3. Aim of regional planning is

- A develop agriculture
- B to improve roads
- C to reduce regional imbalance
- D to develop industry

# 4. Hill area development programmedoes not include

- A Horticulture
- B poultry
- C small scale industry
- D large scale industry

#### 5. ITDP means

- A integrated tribal development project
- B Indian tribal development project
- C Indian tribal development program
- D integrated tribal development programme

# 6. Sustainable development does not include

- A Fast development
- B dynamic development

C	ecological development					
D	present and future development					
7. Inc	dira Gandhi canal command area is in					
A	Gujrat					
В	Bihar					
C	Rajasthan					
D	Maharashtra					
8. Ne	gative influence of Indira Gandhi Canal command area includes					
A	wind erosion					
В	water logging					
C	siltation					
D	afforestation					
9. Promotion of sustainable development does not include						
A	siltation of canals					
В	lining of water resources					
C	shelter belt					
D	water management policy					
10.Bl	harmaurITDPincludes					
A	development of infrastructure					
В	development of transport					
C	development of agriculture					
D	all					
CHA	PTER 10 -TRANSPORT AND COMMUNICATION					
[1] Ir	how many zones has Indian railway system been divided?					
(i)	9					
(ii)	12					
(iii)	16					
(iv)	14					
[2] W	hich one of the following is longest highway in India?					
(i)	N.H1					

(ii) N.H.-6 (iii) N.H.-7 (iv) N.H.-8 [3] On which river and between two places does the national waterway no.1 lie? (i) Brahmaputra, Sadiya-dhubri Ganga, Haldia-allahabad (ii) (iii) West coast canal, Kottapuram-Kollam (iv) Sadia to Allahabad [4] In which of the following year, the first radio programme was broadcast? (i) 1911 (ii) 1936 1927 (iii) (iv) 1923 [5] Open sky policy was introduced by the government in:-(i) **April** 1999 (ii) **April** 1981 **April 1982** (iii) (iv) **April** 1980 [6] The headquarter of eastern railway zone is:-**(i)** Kolkata Hazipur (ii) Bhuvneshwar (iii) (iv) Hugli [7] Golden quadrilateral connects:-(I) Srinagar, Kanyakumari, Kalicut & Pottam (ii) Delhi, Mumbai, Chennai & Kolkata (Iii) Vishakhapatnam, Paradip, Haldia, Hugli Kochhi, Marmagoa, Mumbai & Panjim (Iv) [8] An International air service of India is:-

**(i)** 

Air India

- (ii) Jet airways (iii) Kingfisher (iv) Indigo (a) **15 September 1959** (b)
- [9] The first telecast by Doordarshan was started in:
- 15 September 1960
- 15 September 1950 (c)
- (d) 15 September 1961

# [10] The national average density of roads (km per 100 square Km) in India is:

- (a) 150 km
- 75 km **(b)**
- 200 km (c)
- (d) 100km

# [11] The total length of roads in India is:

- (a) 30 Lakh Km
- (b) 40 Lakh Km
- (c) 50 Lakh km
- (d) 33 Lakh km

# [12] Expand PSLV:

- Polar Satellite Launch Van (a)
- Polar Satellite Launch Vessel (b)
- Polar Satellite Launch Value (c)
- **(d) Polar Satellite Launch Vehicle**

# [13] Which stations are joined by North-South corridor?

- Srinagar-Kanyakumari (a)
- Delhi-Kanyakumari (b)
- Allahabad-Kanyakumari (c)
- Mumbai-Chennai (d)

# [14] Pipeline are most convenient and efficient mode for transporting:

Goods (a)

<b>(b)</b>	Liquids and Gases					
(c)	Minerals					
(d)	Solids					
[15] N	National Highway No. 2 connects:					
(a)	Delhi and Chennai					
(b)	Delhi to Mumbai					
(c)	Delhi to Kolkata					
(d)	Delhi to Kandla					
CHA	PTER 11-INTERNATIONAL TRADE					
1. In	dia's balance of trade is negative due to					
A	Overpopulation					
В	high price of crude oil					
C	liberal policies of government					
D	all of above					
2. Wł	nich of the following is not an item of India s export					
A	agriculture and allied products					
В	paperboard and newspaper					
C	ores and minerals					
D	manufactured goods					
3. Wł	nich of the following is not a major trading partner of India					
A	South Africa					
В	U. S. A .					
C	U. A. E.					
D	China					
4. Dia	amond harbor is on the river					
A	Mahanadi					
В	Damodar					
C	Hugli					
D	Subernrekha					

5. Offshore terminal at Vadinar belongs to

Marmagao A B Kandla  $\mathbf{C}$ Haldia D Kochi 6. Deepest harbor for large vessels is A **Paradwip** Vishakhapatnam В C J L Nehru D Tuticorin 7. Silt accumulation is problem of this port Marmagao A В Kandla  $\mathbf{C}$ Haldia D Kolkata 8. Port on Zuary estuary Marmagao A В Kandla  $\mathbf{C}$ Haldia D Kochi 9. Artificial harbor of India A Kandla В Kochi  $\mathbf{C}$ Chennai D Haldia 10. Queen of Arabian sea A Marmagao В kandla C Haldia D kochi

#### Ch 12- GEOGRAPHICAL PERSPECTIVE ON SELECTED ISSUES

1	XX71 • 1	C 41	e 11 •			11 4 1
	Which one	of the	tallawing	river i	s nioniv	nollitea-
_	VVIIICII UIIC	OI LIIC	TOHO WHIE	11101	o men	ponucu

- A. Brahmaputra
- B. Satluj
- C. Yamuna
- D. Godavari

# 2-Which of the following deceases is caused by water pollution-

- A. conjunctivitis
- B. Diarrhorea
- C. Respiratory infections
- D. Bronchitis

# 3. Which of the following is the cause of acid rain?

- A. water pollution
- B. land pollution
- C. Noise pollution
- D. Air pollution

# 4 Push and pull factors are responsible for-

- A. Migration
- B. land degradation
- C. slums
- D. Air pollution

# 5- Which of the following is not the source of noise pollution-

- A. Use of pesticides
- B. aircrafts
- C. automobiles
- D. factories

# 6- Which of the following place is the role model for ecological restoration-

- A. Dharavi
- B. Talcher
- C. Daurala

7- By 2	2050, how much of the world population is expected to live in cities-
A.	$1/3^{\mathrm{rd}}$ pop.
B.	$2/3^{\rm rd}$ pop.
C.	Total pop.
D.	No change in pop.
8 Whi	ch of the following place is the Asia's largest slum-
A.	Dharavi
B.	Talcher
C.	Jhabua
D.	Mahim
9 As p	er 2011 census,India's rural population is –
A.	75%
B.	72%
C.	70%
D.	68%
10 Jha	bua(M.P) is largely inhabitated by which of the following tribal group-
A.	Santhals
B.	Bhils
C.	Gonds
D.	Munda

D. Mahim

# SECTION-8 SAMPLE PAPERS

SAMPLE PAPER-1 KENDRIYA VIDYALAYA SANGATHAN DELHI REGION GEOGRAPHY (Code-029) - XII

# **BLUE PRINT**

Time: 3 Hrs. M.M: 70

**Book 1: Fundamentals of Human Geography (NCERT Publication)** 

**Book 2: India: People and Economy (NCERT Publication)** 

	Total				Total
Form of Q.	Long Answer	Short Answer	MCQ	Мар	of Unit
Marks	5	3	1	5	
Part A: Fundamentals of Human Geogra	aphy				l .
Unit					
1. Human Geography		3(1)	1(1)		4
2. People	5(1)		1(2)		7
3. Human Activities	5(1)		1(2)		7
4.Transport, Communication and Trade	5(1)		1(2)		7
5. Human Settlements		3(1)	1(2)		5
Map work				5(1)	5
Part B: India: People and Economy					
6. People	5(1)		1(1)		6
7. Human Settlements		3(1)	1(2)		5
8. Resource and Development	5(1)		1(2)		7
9. Transport, Communication and International Trade	5(1)		1(2)		7
10.Geographical Perspective on Selected Issues and Problems		3(1)	1(2)		5
Map work				5(1)	5
Sub Total (A & B)	5X6=30	3X4=12	1X18=18	5X2=10	70(30)

Note: Figures given within brackets indicate number of questions and outside the brackets, their total marks

#### **SAMPLE PAPER-1**

केन्द्रीय विद्यालय संगठन (दिल्ली संभाग)

# KENDRIYA VIDYALAYA SANGATHAN (DELHI REGION) भूगोल (सैद्धान्तिक) / GEOGRAPHY (THEORY)

#### कक्षा -12/CLASS-XII

निर्धारित समय : 3 घंटे अधिकतमअंक : 70

<u>Time allowed: 3 hours</u> Maximum Marks: 70

#### सामान्य निर्देश:

- (1) इस प्रश्न पत्र में कुल 30 प्रश्न हैं I
- (2) सभी प्रश्न अनिवार्य हैं I
- (3) प्रश्न संख्या 1 से 18 तक बहु —िवकल्पीय प्रश्न हैं I प्रत्येक प्रश्न 1 अंक का है I प्रत्येक प्रश्न में दिए गए चार विकल्पों में से सही विकल्प चुनकर उत्तर प्रस्तिका में लिखें I
- (4) प्रश्न संख्या 19 से 22 तक लघु उत्तरीय प्रश्न हैं I प्रत्येक प्रश्न 3 अंक का है I प्रत्येक प्रश्न का उत्तर 80-100 शब्दों से अधिक नहीं होना चाहिए I
- (5) प्रश्न संख्या 23 से 28 तक दीर्घ उत्तरीय प्रश्न हैं I प्रत्येक प्रश्न 5 अंक का है I प्रत्येक प्रश्न का उत्तर 150 शब्दों से अधिक नहीं होना चाहिए I
- (6) प्रश्न संख्या 29 भारत के रेखा-मानचित्र पर भौगोलिक लक्षणों की स्थिति को उपयुक्त चिन्हों से दर्शाने से सम्बंधित हैं I यह प्रश्न 5 अंक का है I
- (7) प्रश्न संख्या 30 विश्व के रेखा-मानचित्र पर भौगोलिक लक्षणों को पहचानने तथा उनके नाम लिखने से सम्बंधित हैं I यह प्रश्न 5 अंक का है I
- (8) आपको दिए गए संसार तथा भारत के रेखा-मानचित्र को उत्तर-प स्तिका से संलग्न अवश्य करें I
- (9) रेखा-मानचित्रों के रेखां कन के लिए स्टेन्सिल या टेम्प्लेट्स के उपयोग की अनुमति दी जाती है I

#### **General Instructions:**

- (1) There are 30 questions in all.
- (2) All questions are compulsory.
- (3) Question numbers 1 to 18 are multiple-choice questions carrying 1 marks each. Choose the correct option out of the four options given in each question and write it in your answer-book.
- (4) Question numbers 19 to 22 are short answer questions carrying 3 marks each. Answer to each of these questions should not exceed 80-100 words.
- (5) Question numbers 23 to 28 are long answer questions carrying 5 marks each. Answer to each of these questions should not exceed 150 words.
- (6) Question numbers 29 is related to locating and labelling of geographical features on the given outline map of India. This question carries 5 marks.
- (7) Question numbers 30 is related to identification of geographical features on the given outline map of world and writing their names. This question carries 5 marks.
- (8) Outline maps of the World and India provided to you must be attached within your answer-book.
- (9) Use of templates or stencils for drawing outline maps is allowed.

#### (SECTION-A)

(1)

Q 1'Humanisation of nature'is also known as

(a)Possibilism (c) Neo determinism (b) Determinism (d) None of the above 'प्रकृति का मानवीकरण'को कहते हैं -(a) संभववाद (c) नव -निश्चयवाद (b)निश्चयवाद (d) इनमें से कोई नहीं OR Which one of the following is not an approach in human geography? B.Quantitative revolution A.Areal differentiation C.Spatial organization D.Exploration and description निम्नलिखित में से कौन-सा एक मानव भूगोल का उपागम नहीं है ? क क्षेत्रीय विभिन्नता ख मात्रात्मक क्रांति ग.स्थानिक संगठन घ.अन्वेषण और वर्णन Q2. Which one of the following Country has the highest growth of population? (1) A.LiberiaB.Norwey B. Narvey C.England D. Australia निम्नलिखित में से किस महादवीप में जनसँख्याब द्वि सर्वाधिक है? क. लाइबेरिया ख. नोर्वे ग. इंग्लैंड घ. ऑस्ट्रेलिया Q 3. Which one of the following figures represents the old age group of the population? (1) A.15 to 65 years B.15 to 64 years C. 60 years & above D.15 to 59 years निम्नलिखित में से कौन सा वर्ग जनसँख्या के वृधावस्था आयु वर्ग का प्रतिनिधित्व करता है?

क.15 से 65 वर्ष ख.15 से 64 वर्ष ग.60 वर्ष और उससे ऊपर घ. 15 से 59 वर्ष OR Which one of the following is NOT a push factor? A.Water shortage **B.**Unemployment c.Medical/educational facilities **D.**Epidemics निम्नलिखित में से कौन सा एक प्रतिकर्ष कारक नहीं हैं? B.बेरोजगारी A.जलाभाव C.चिकित्सा/ शैक्षणिक D.महामारिय Q 4.Gathering is practised n: A. Amazon Basin B. Ganga Basin C. Nile Basin D. Volga Basin संग्रहण क्रिया की जाती है: A. अमेजनबेसिन B.गंगाबेसिन C. नीलबेसिन D.वोल्गाबेसिन OR This type of agriculture is best developed in Steppes, Prairies, Pampas and Velds. A. Extensive Commercial Grain Farming. B. Intensive Subsistence Farming. C. Plantation Agriculture. D. Mixed Farming. स्टेपीज, प्रेयरीज, पम्पास और वेलड्स में इस प्रकार की कृषि मुख्य रूप से विकसित है A. विस्तृत वाणिज्यिक अनाज कृषि। B. गहन निर्वाह कृषि। C. रोपण कृषि। D. मिश्रित कृषि। Q5 .Jobs that involve high degrees and level of innovations are known as? (1) A.Secondary activities **B.**Quarternary activities C.Quinary activities D.Primary activities वे काम जिनमे उच्च परिमाण और स्तर वाले अन्वेषण सम्मिलित होते है,कहलाते है? क. दवितीयक क्रियाकलाप ख. चतुर्थ क्रियाकलाप

ग. पंचमक्रियाकलाप	घ. प्राथमिक क्रियाकलाप			
Q6.The Big Inch pipeline transports	(1)			
A.Milk	B.Liquified Petroleum Gas(LPG)			
C.Water	D. Petroleum			
बिग इंच पाइपलाइन के द्वारा परिवहित किया	जाता है:			
क.दूध	ख.तरल पेट्रोलियम गैस(LPG)			
ग.जल	घ.पेट्रोलियम			
B. France       D. U         रुहर का एक औद्योगिक क्षेत्र है	ermany			
A. इंग्लैंड B. जर्मनी				
C. फ्रांस D. यूएसए Q 8.Which one of the following forms of settlement develops along either side of lakes?				
A.Circular	B.Cross-shaped			
C.Linear	D.Square			
निम्न में से किस प्रकार की बस्तियाँ झील के किनारे होती है?				
क.वृ त्ताकार	ख. चौक पट्टी			
ग.रेखीय	घ. वर्गाकार			
Q 9Cities having population more than onemillion are known as: (1)				
A.Metropolitancities	B.Mega cities			
C.Con-urbation	D.Cosmopolitan			
एक मिलियन से अधिक जनसँख्या वाले शहर क्या कहलाते है?				

क.महानगर	ख. मगासटा
ग.नगर-समूह	घ. कॉस्मोपॉलिटन
Q 10. Which one of the following states has	the highest literacyin India? (1)
A.West Bengal	B.Kerala
C.Uttar Pradesh	D.Bihar
निम्नलिखित राज्यों में से किस एक में साक्षरता	प्तर्वाधिक है?
क.बिहार	ख. केरल
ग.उत्तर प्रदेश	घ. बिहार
Q 11.Which one of the following is the main	n reason for femalemigration in India?(1)
A.Education	B. Business
C.Work& Employment	D. Marriage
निम्नलिखित में से कौनसा भारत में महिला प्रवास	ा का मुख्य कारण है?
क. शिक्षा	ख. व्यवसाय
ग. काम और रोजगार	घ. विवाह
Q 12. Which one of the following states rece (a) Uttar Pradesh (c) Maharashtra निम्नलिखित में से किस राज्य में सर्वाधिक संख्या में आप्रवासी आते हैं	(b) Delhi (d) Bihar
(a) उत्तरप्रदेश	(b) दिल्ली
(c) महाराष्ट्र	(d) बिहार
Q 13. Which one of the following is the main	n form of landdegradation in irrigated areas? (1)
A.Gully Erosion	B.wind Erosion
C.Salinasation of soils	D.Siltation of land
निम्न में से कौन सा सिंचित क्षेत्रो में भूनिम्नीकर	ण का मुख्य कारण है?

क.अवनालिका अपरदन ख.वायु अपरदन घ.भूमि पर सिल्ट जमाव ग.मृदा लवणता Q 14. Which of the following town is NOT located on a river bank? (d) Kolkata (b) Bhopal निम्नलिखित में से कौन सा नगर नदी तट पर अवस्थित नहीं है ? 1 (a) आगरा (c) पटना (d) कोलकाता (b) भोपाल Q 15. Name the city located at both the terminals of National water way No.2 of India. (1) A. Haldia to Allahabad B.Sadiya to Dhubri C.KottapuramtoKollam D.None of the above राष्ट्रीय जल मार्ग संख्या -2 किन दो स्थानों के मध्य पड़ता है-A.हल्दिया-इलाहाबाद B.सदिया-धुवरी C. कोत्त्याप्रम-कोल्लम D.इनमे से कोई नहीं Q 16. The largest Oil Refinery in India is: A. Barauni **B.Jamnagar** C.Cochi D.Haldia भारत में सबसे बड़ी तेल रिफाइनरी है: A. बरौनी **B.जामनगर** C.कोच्चि D.हल्दिया Q 17. Which one of the following river is highly polluted-(1) A.Brahmaputra B.Satluj C.Yamuna D. Godavari निम्नलिखित में से सर्वाधिक प्रदूषित नदी कौन सी है-

A.ब्रहमप्त्र

C.यम्ना

B.सतुलज

D.गोदावरी

Q18.which of the following is the cause of Diarrhorea?

A.water pollution B.land pollution

C.Noise pollution D. Air pollution

निम्नलिखित में से कौनसा हैजा का एक कारण है-

A. जल प्रदुषण B. भूमि प्रदुषण

C.शोर प्रदुषण D. वायु प्रदुषण

#### SECTION - B

**19**.What is "Environmental Determinism"? Mention any two characteristics of this concept.

"पर्यावरण निश्चयवाद" क्या है ? इस संकल्पना की किन्ही दो विशेषताओं को लिखिए | **20**.Describe three major problems associated with urban waste disposal in India. **(3)** भारत में नगरीय अपशिष्ट निपटान से सम्बंधित किन्ही तीन मुख्य समस्याओं की व्याख्या कीजिये 21.Study the diagram given below and answer the question that follow: 1X3=3

India – Class-wise number of towns and cities and their population, 2001					
Class	Population Size	Number	Population (Million)	% of total Urban Population	% of Growth 1991-2001
All classes					
Total		5161	285.35	100	31.13
I	1,00,000 and more	423	172.04	61.48	23.12
П	50,000 - 99,999	498	34.43	12.3	43.45
Ш	20,000 - 49,999	1386	41.97	15.0	46.19
IV	10,000 - 9,999	1560	22.6	8.08	32.94
V	5,000 - 9,999	1057	7.98	2.85	41.49
VI	Less than 5,000	227	0.8	0.29	21.21

<sup>(21.1)</sup> What is population size of class - I towns?

ऊपर दिए गए चित्र का अध्ययन कीजिये और उसके नीचे दिए गए प्रश्नों का उत्तर लिखिए।

<sup>(21.2)</sup> What is the total number of cities having population 1 lakh & above?

<sup>(21.3)</sup>In how many classes Census of India classifies urban centres?

- 21.1) प्रथम वर्ग के नगरों की जनसँख्या का पैमाना क्या है ?
- (21.2)एक लाख और उससे अधिक जनसँख्या वाले नगरों की संख्या कितनी है ?
- (21.3)भारत की जनगणना ने नगरों को कितने वर्गों में बांटा है?
- **22**. Discuss any five patterns of rural settlement patterns develop in different parts of the world on thebasis of forms and shapes. (3)

विश्व के किन्ही पाँच प्रकार के ग्रामीण बस्ति प्रतिरूपोंका आकार एवं प्रकार के आधार पर वर्णन करें | OR

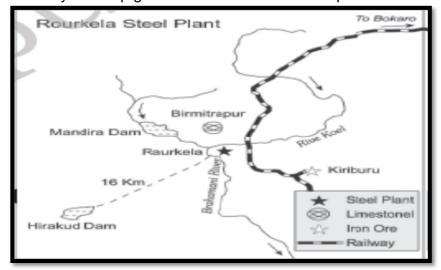
Name the five type of Urban settlement in the world . Write one main feature of any one type . दुनिया में पांच प्रकार के शहरी बस्तियों के नाम दीजिये। किसी एक प्रकार की एक मुख्य विशेषता लिखिए।

#### (SECTION-C)

23.classify industries on the basis of ownership and briefly explain each of them. (5) स्वामित्व के आधार पर उद्योगों का वर्गीकरण कीजिये और प्रत्येक का संक्षिप्त विवरण दें।

What is tourism ?Analyse any four tourist attraction in the world . पर्यटन क्या है? द्निया में किसी भी चार पर्यटक आकर्षण का विश्लेषण करें

24. Study the map given below and answer the questions that follow: - 1+!+2+1=(5)



- 1. Name the state in which this steel plantis located.
- 2. What is the source of iron or efor this plant?
- 3. Name the two sources providing wate rand power to this steel plant.
- 4. Name the country which help to establish this steel plant.

दिए गए मानचित्र का अधययन कर निम्नलिखित प्रश्नों के उत्तर दीजिये:-

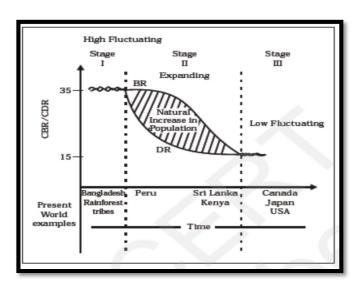
१. उस राज्य का नाम बताइए, जिसमे यह संयंत्र स्थित है।

- २. उस संयंत्र के लिए लौह अयस्क का क्या स्रोत है?
- 3. उन दो स्रोतों के नाम बताइए, जो इस इस्पात संयंत्र को जल तथा उर्जा प्रदान करते हैं | ४.यह संयंत्र किस देश के सहयोग से स्थापित किया गया ?
- 25. Describe the five advantages of air transport over other modes of transport in the world. अन्य परिवहन के साधनों की तुलना में हवाई परिवहन के किन्ही पांच लाभ का वर्णन कीजिये | (5)

Explain the significance of each of the transport and communication services available in the world.

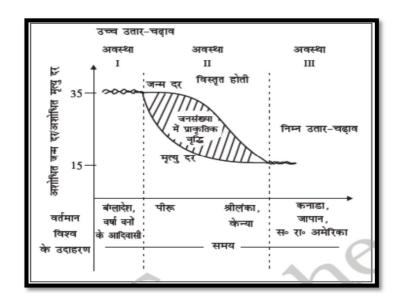
द्निया में उपलब्ध परिवहन और संचार सेवाओं में से प्रत्येक के महत्व को समझाओ।

26. Study the diagram and answer the following questions:- (1+1+1+2=5)



- 1. Name the stage which shows high fluctuatin grate of population growth.
- 2. Why is the population growth of Srilanka expanding? Give one reason.
- 3. Give one reason responsible for low fluctuation in population growth in stage III.
- 4. Explain the first stage of demographic transition theory.

निम्न चित्र का अध्ययन कीजिये तथा दिए गए प्रश्नों के उत्तर दीजिये:-



- 1. उस अवस्था का नाम बताइए जिसमे जनसंख्या वृद्धि दर अत्यधिक अस्थिर है |
- 2. श्रीलंका की जनसँख्या वृद्धि का विस्तार क्यों हो रहा है ? एक कारण लिखिए |
- 3. तीसरी अवस्था में जनसंख्या वृद्धि में निम्न अस्थिरता के लिए कोई एक जिम्मेदार कारण लिखिए।
- 4. जनांकिकीय संक्रमण सिध्दांत की पहली अवस्था का वर्णन कीजिये।

27. What recent steps have been taken for development and modernisation of Indian railways?(5) भारतीय रेलवे के विकास और आधुनिकरण के लिए हाल ही में कौन से कदम उठाए गए हैं?

OR

.Explain the changing pattern of the international trade of India.

भारत के अंतर्राष्ट्रीय व्यापार की बदलती प्रकृति का वर्णन कीजिये।

28. What is meant by growth of population? Discuss briefly four phases of population growth in India during the twentieth century. (5)

जनसँख्या वृद्धि से आपका क्या अभिप्राय है ? बीसवी शताब्दी में भारत की जनसँख्या वृद्धि की चार अवस्थाओं का वर्णन कीजिये

#### OR

What is Human development? Describe the four pillars of human development. मानव विकास किसे कहते है? मानव विकास के चार स्तंभों का वर्णन कीजिए.

- 29. On the given out line map of India locate the following geographical features(Any five). दिए गए भारत के मानचित्र में निम्नलिखित भोगोलिक स्थानो को दर्शाओ(कोई भी पांच)(5)
  - 1. The State with lowest density of population [2011]

सबसे जनसंख्या घनत्व वाला राज्य [2011]

Largest Tea producing state of India.

भारत का सबसे बड़ा चाय उत्पादक राज्य।

3. The oldest oil field in India

भारत का प्राचीनतम तेल क्षेत्र

4. Durgapur steel plant.

द्गीप्रइस्पात स्यंत्र

5. Chhotanagpur Industrial Region.

छोटानागप्र औद्योगिक क्षेत्र

6. State with highest literacy

सर्वोच्च साक्षरता वाला राज्य

7. Major sea port located in orrisa.

ओड़िसा में स्थित प्रमुख समुद्री बंदरगाह

**30**. In the given map of world, features are shown by A, B, C, D and E, identify the features with the help of information given below and write their names on the lines marked on the map. **(5)** 

नीचे दिये गए मानचित्र में A,B,C,D,E अंकित भौगोलिक स्थलाकृतिओ को पहचानिए एवं उनके नाम अंकित रेखा पर लिखिए |

A. An area of extensive commercial grain farming.

विस्तृत वाणिज्य अनाज कृषि का एक क्षेत्र।

B. A member, nation of OPEC.

OPEC राष्ट्र देशो का सदस्य

C. A food gathering area

एक खादय संग्रहण क्षेत्र

D. A shipping canal

एक नौ परिवहन नहर

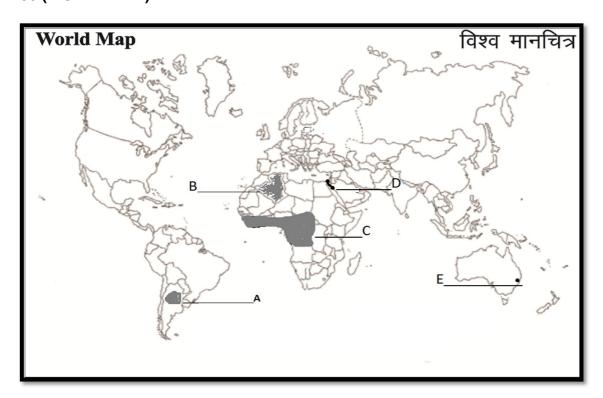
E. A major port of Australia.

ऑस्ट्रेलिया का एक प्रमुख पत्तन

Q.29 (INDIA MAP)



# 30 (WORLD MAP)



	SAMPLE PAPER-1 KENDRIYA VIDYALAYA SANGATHAN DELHI REGION (2018-19) GEOGRAPHY (Code-029) – XII MARKING SCHEME			
Q. No.	Time: 3 Hrs. M.M: 70	Marks		
1	(a) Possibilism OR	1/2+1/2		
	B.Quantitative revolution			
2	A.Liberia	1		
3	C. 60 years & above OR c.Medical/educational facilities	1		
4	Amazon Basin OR Extensive Commercial Grain Farming	1		
5	B.Quarternary activities	1		
6	D. Petroleum	1		
7	B. Germany	1		
8	A.Circular			
9	A.Metropolitan cities			
10	B.Kerala D.Marriage			
12	(c) Maharashtra			
13	C.Salinasation of soils			
14	(b) Bhopal			
15	A. Haldia to Allahabad			
16	B.Jamnagar			
17	C. Yamuna			
18	A. water pollution			
19		3		
20	<ol> <li>Urban area saregenerally marked by over crowding, congestion, in adequate facilities to support the fast growing population and cosequent poor sanitary conditins and foul air.</li> <li>Solid wastes cause health hazard through creation of obnoxious smell and harbouring offlies and rodents, which act as carriers of diseases like typhoid, diptheria, diarrhoea, malaria, dengue, chick engunia and cholera, etc.</li> <li>These wastes cause frequentnuisanceas and when these are carelessly handled, spread by wind and splittered throughra in water.</li> </ol>	3		

	Concentration of industrial units in and around urban centres gives rise to disposal of industrial wastes. The dumping of industrial waste in to river leads to water pollution.	
21	(21.1) 1,00,000 and more (21.2) 423 (21.3) 6	3
22	Patterns of rural settlements are influenced by the site of the village, the surrounding topography and terrain. On the basis of forms and shapes are:- 1. Linear Pattern 2. Rectangular Pattern 3. Circular Pattern 4. Star like Pattern 5. T-Shaped, Y-Shaped, Cross-Shaped or Cruciform Settlements. (Characteristics of each pattern) OR Urban centre are chosen as - town, city, conurbation, megalopolis, million city on the basis of size, ability of services and functions. (Explain each of the above mentioned types)	3
23	On the basis of the ownership, theindustries are classified as:  (i) public sector, (ii) private sector, (iii) joint sector  And (iv) cooperative sector  (Brief explain of each).  OR  Tourism is travel which is done for the purpose of recreation rather than business.  The four factors which attracts tourists in the world are as follows-1-climate 2-landscape 3-history and art 4- culture and economy Any other relevant point	5
24	<ol> <li>Odisha</li> <li>Iron oreis obtained from Sundergarh and keonjhar districts from a distance not more than 77 km.</li> <li>Water and power is provided to this plant from Hira kund Dam and Mandira Dam (River Mahanadi and Brahamani)</li> <li>Germany</li> </ol>	5
25		5

1		
	<ul> <li>i) it is the fastest means of transportation.</li> <li>ii) Being fast, it is preferred by passengers for long-distance travel.</li> <li>iii) Valuable cargo can be moved rapidly on a world-wide scale.</li> <li>iv) It is often the only means to reach inaccessible areas. <ul> <li>v)The frictions created by mountainous snow fields or in hospitable desert terrains have been overcome.</li> </ul> </li> <li>OR <ul> <li>Significance of various transport services are as follows-</li> <li>1- Road transport</li> <li>2- Railway transport</li> <li>3- water transport</li> <li>4- air transport</li> <li>5- pipeline transport</li> <li>6- satellite communication</li> <li>7- cyber space comm.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
20	4. Change	E
26	<ol> <li>Stage I</li> <li>High fertility rate and reduced mortality rate.</li> <li>Both fertility and mortality rate have declined considerably.</li> <li>High fertility and high mortality, population growth slow, people primarily engaged in agricultural activities, very low literacy, low level of technology, low life expectancy and two hundred years ago all countries are in this stage.</li> </ol>	5
27	Recent development and modernisation steps taken in Indian	5
21	railways are:  1. Extensive programme to convert the metre and narrow gauge to broad gauge.  2. The steam engines have been replaced by diesel and electric engines.  3. Speed of new trains has increased.  4. The environment of the stations has improved. There have been computerized reservations, automatic electric signals, loading facilities (container service) etc.  5. Introduction metro rails in metropolitan cities.  6. Improved passenger services on the trains, include AC coaches, pantry services, ATM machines, medical services etc  OR  Changein Exports  1. The share of agriculture and allied products has declined.  2. Shares of mineral orere mained constant.  3. Share of petroleum and its products increased.  4. The decline in traditional items due to tough competition like jute products.  5. Significant growth in the export of engineering and leather	3

	goods.  ChangeinImports  1. Share of food grains import is replaced by petroleum and fertilisers.  2. Import of capital goods has increased.  3. Import of edible oil and pulses in place of food items.  4. Gold and silver imports has increased. Import of professional instruments has also increased	
28	Growth of population is the change in the number of people living in particular area between two points of time. Its rate is expressed in percentage.  Phases of Population Growth in India  1. Period of stagnant growth rate (before 1921) 2. Period of steady growth rate (1921 – 1951) 3. Period of rapid growth rate (1951 – 1981), and 4. Period of declining growth rate (after 1981)  Explain each point  OR  Human development that enlarge people's choices & improves their lives.  1. Equity 2. Sustainability 3. Productivity 4. Empowerment  Explanation with examples	5
29	Map work of India	(5)
30	<ol> <li>Pampas of Argentina</li> <li>Algeria</li> <li>Zaire basin</li> <li>Suez canal</li> <li>Sydney</li> </ol>	(5)

# SAMPLE PAPER-2 KENDRIYA VIDYALAYA SANGATHAN DELHI REGION GEOGRAPHY (Code-029) - XII BLUE PRINT

Time: 3 Hrs. M.M: 70

# **Book 1: Fundamentals of Human Geography (NCERT Publication)**

**Book 2: India: People and Economy (NCERT Publication)** 

	Total				Total
Form of Q.	Long Answer	Short Answer	MCQ	Мар	of Unit
Marks	5	3	1	5	
Part A: Fundamentals of Human Geogr	aphy	1	l	1	
Unit					
1. Human Geography		3(1)	1(1)		4
2. People	5(1)		1(2)		7
3. Human Activities	5(1)		1(2)		7
4.Transport, Communication and Trade	5(1)		1(2)		7
5. Human Settlements		3(1)	1(2)		5
Map work				5(1)	5
Part B: India: People and Economy	1	<u>l</u>	L	<u>l</u>	
6. People	5(1)		1(1)		6
7. Human Settlements		3(1)	1(2)		5
8. Resource and Development	5(1)		1(2)		7
Transport, Communication and International Trade	5(1)		1(2)		7
10.Geographical Perspective on Selected Issues and Problems		3(1)	1(2)		5
Map work				5(1)	5
Sub Total (A & B)	5X6=30	3X4=12	1X18=18	5X2=10	70(30)

Note: Figures given within brackets indicate number of questions and outside the brackets, their total marks

#### **SAMPLE PAPER-2**

केन्द्रीय विद्यालय संगठन (दिल्ली संभाग)

# KENDRIYA VIDYALAYA SANGATHAN (DELHI REGION) भूगोल (सैद्धान्तिक) / GEOGRAPHY (THEORY)

#### कक्षा -12/CLASS-XII

निर्धारित समय : 3 घंटे अधिकतम अंक : 70

Time allowed: 3 hours Maximum Marks: 70

#### सामान्यनिर्देश:

(1) इस प्रश्न पत्र में कुल 30 प्रश्न हैं I

- (2) सभी प्रश्न अनिवार्य हैं I
- (3) प्रश्न संख्या1 से 18 तक बहु —िवकल्पीय प्रश्न हैं I प्रत्येक प्रश्न 1 अंक का है I प्रत्येक प्रश्न में दिए गए चार विकल्पों में से सही विकल्प चुनकरउत्तर पुस्तिका में लिखें I
- (4) प्रश्न संख्या 19 से 22 तक लघु उत्तरीय प्रश्न हैं I प्रत्येक प्रश्न 3 अंक का है I प्रत्येक प्रश्न का उत्तर 80-100 शब्दों से अधिक नहीं होना चाहिए I
- (5) प्रश्न संख्या 23 से 28 तक दीर्घ उत्तरीय प्रश्न हैं I प्रत्येक प्रश्न 5 अंक का है I प्रत्येक प्रश्न का उत्तर 150 शब्दों से अधिक नहीं होना चाहिए I
- (6) प्रश्न संख्या 29 भारत के रेखा-मानचित्र पर भौगोलिक लक्षणों की स्थिति को उपयक्त चिन्हों से दर्शाने से सम्बंधित हैं I यह प्रश्न 5 अंक का है I
- (7) प्रश्न संख्या 30 विश्व के रेखा-मानचित्र पर भौगोलिक लक्षणों को पहचानने तथा उनके नाम लिखने से सम्बंधित हैं I यह प्रश्न 5 अंक का है I
- (8) आपको दिए गए संसार तथा भारत के रेखा-मानचित्र को उत्तर-पु स्तिका से संलग्न अवश्य करें  ${
  m I}$
- (9) रेखा-मानिचत्रों के रेखां कन के लिए स्टेन्सिलया टेम्प्लेट्स के उपयोग की अनुमित दी जाती है  ${
  m I}$

#### **General Instructions:**

- (1) There are 30 questions in all.
- (2) All questions are compulsory.
- (3) Question numbers 1 to 18 are multiple-choice questions carrying 1 marks each. Choose the correct option out of the four options given in each question and write it in your answer-book.
- (4) Question numbers 19 to 22 are short answer questions carrying 3 marks each. Answer to each of these questions should not exceed 80-100 words.
- (5) Question numbers 23 to 28 are long answer questions carrying 5 marks each. Answer to each of these questions should not exceed 150 words.
- (6) Question numbers 29 is related to locating and labelling of geographical features on the given outline map of India. This question carries 5 marks.
- (7) Question numbers 30 is related to identification of geographical features on the given outline map of world and writing their names. This question carries 5 marks.
- (8) Outline maps of the World and India provided to you must be attached within your answer-book.
- (9) Use of templates or stencils for drawing outline maps is allowed.

#### (SECTION-A)

Q 1'Stop and go determinism' is also known as (1) (a)Possibilism (c) Neo determinism (d) None of the above (b) Determinism 'रुको और जाओ निश्चयवाद' को कहते हैं -(a) संभववाद (c) नव -निश्चयवाद (b)निश्चयवाद (d) इनमें से कोई नहीं OR Which one of the following is not an approach in human geography? A. Areal differentiation B.Quantitative revolution C.Spatial organization D.Exploration and description निम्नलिखित में से कौन-सा एक मानव भूगोल का उपागम नहीं है ? क.क्षेत्रीय विभिन्नता ख.मात्रात्मक क्रांति ग.स्थानिक संगठन घ.अन्वेषण और वर्णन Q2. Which one of the following continents has the highest growth of population? (1) A.Africa **B.South America** C.Asia D.North America निम्नलिखित में से किस महादवीप में जनसँख्याबृद्धि सर्वाधिक है? क. अफ्रीका ख.दक्षिण अमेरिका ग. एशिया घ.उत्तरी अमेरिका Q 3. Which one of the following figures represents the working age group of the population? (1) A.15 to 65 years B.15 to 64 years C.15 to 66 years D.15 to 59 years निम्नलिखित में से कौन सा वर्ग जनसँख्या के कार्यशील आयु वर्ग का प्रतिनिधित्व करता है?

क.15 से 65 वर्ष ख.15 से 64 वर्ष

ग.15 से 66 वर्ष घ. 15 से 59 वर्ष

OR

Which one of the following is NOT a push factor?

A. Water shortage B. Unemployment

c.Medical/educational facilities D.Epidemics

निम्नलिखित में से कौन सा एक प्रतिकर्ष कारक नहीं हैं?

A.जलाभाव B.बेरोजगारी

C.चिकित्सा/ शैक्षणिक D.महामारिय

Q 4.Growing of flowers is called: (1)

A.Truck farming B.Factory farming

C.Mixed farming D.Floriculture

फूलों की कृषि कहलाती है-

क. ट्रकफार्मिंग ख. कारखाना कृषि

ग. मिश्रित कृषि घ.प्ष्प उत्पादन

OR

Which one of the following types of industries produces raw materials for other industries?

A.Cottage Industries B.Small-scale Industries

C.Basic industries D.Footloose Industries

निम्नलिखित में से कौन-सा उद्योग अन्य उद्योगों के लिए कच्चे माल का उत्पादन करता है ?

क.कुटीर उद्योग ख.छोटे पैमाने के उद्योग

ग.आधारभूत उद्योग घ.स्वच्छंद उद्योग

Q5 .Jobs that involve high degrees and level of innovations are known as ?(1)

A.Secondary activities **B.**Quarternary activities C.Quinary activities D.Primary activities वे काम जिनमे उच्च परिमाण और स्तर वाले अन्वेषण सम्मिलित होते है,कहलाते है? क. द्वितीयक क्रियाकलाप ख.चतुर्थ क्रियाकलाप ग.पंचमक्रियाकलाप घ.प्राथमिक क्रियाकलाप Q6. The Big Inch pipeline transports (1) A.Milk B.Liquified Petroleum Gas(LPG) C.Water D. Petroleum बिग इंच पाइपलाइन के द्वारा परिवहित किया जाता है: ख.तरल पेट्रोलियम गैस(LPG) क.दूध ग.जल घ.पेट्रोलियम Q7. Which one of the following South American nation is a part of OPEC ?(1) A.Brazil **B.Chile** C.Venezuela D.Peru दक्षिणी अमेरिकी राष्ट्रों में से कौन सा एक ओपेक का सदस्य है? क.ब्राज़ील ख.चिली ग.वेनेज़्एला घ.पेरू Q 8. Which one of the following forms of settlement develops along either side of roads, rivers or canals? (1) A.Circular **B.Cross-shaped** C.Linear D.Square

निम्न में से किस प्रकार की बस्तियाँ सड़क,नदी या नहर के किनारे होती है?

ग.रेखीय घ.वर्गाकार Q 9.. Cities having population more than five million are known as:(1) A.Metropolitancities B.Mega cities C.Con-urbation D.Cosmopolitan पाँच मिलियन से अधिक जनसँख्या वाले शहर क्या कहलाते है? क.महानगर ख.मेगासिटी घ.कॉस्मोपॉलिटन ग.नगर-समूह Q 10. Which one of the following states has the highest density of population in India? (1) A.West Bengal B.Kerala C.Uttar Pradesh D.Bihar निम्नलिखित राज्यों में से किस एक में जनसंख्या का घनत्व सर्वाधिक है? ख.केरल क.बिहार ग.उत्तर प्रदेश घ.बिहार Q 11. Which one of the following is the main reason for male migration in India? (1) A.Education **B.Business** C.Work & Employment D.Marriage निम्नलिखित में से कौनसा भारत में पुरुष प्रवास का मुख्य कारण है? क.शिक्षा ख.व्यवसाय ग.काम और रोजगार घ.विवाह Q 12. Which one of the following states of India has the highest rank in

ख.चौक पट्टी

क.वृत्ताकार

the Human Development Index? (1) A.Tamil Nadu B.Punjab C.Kerala D.Haryana मानव विकास सूचकांक में भारत के निम्नलिखित राज्यों से किस एक की कोटि उच्चतम है?1 ख.पंजाब क.तमिलनाडू ग.केरल घ.हरियाणा Q 13. Which one of the following is the main form of landdegradation in irrigated areas? (1) A.Gully Erosion **B.Wind Erosion** C.Salinasation of soils D.Siltation of land निम्न में से कौन सा सिंचित क्षेत्रो में भूनिम्नीकरण का मुख्य कारण है? क. अवनालिका अपरदन ख. वायुअपरदन घ. भूमि पर सिल्ट जमाव ग. मृदा लवणता Q 14. The highest proportion of the total water used in the country is in which one of the following sectors? (1) A.Irrigation B.Domestic use1 C.Industries D.None of the above देश में प्रयुक्त कुल जल का सबसे अधिक समानुपात निम्नलिखित सेक्टरो में से किस सेक्टर में है? B.घरेलु उपयोग A.सिं चाई C.उद्योग D.इनमे से कोई नहीं Q 15.Name the city located at both the terminals of National water way No.1 of India. (1) A. Haldia to Allahabad B.Sadiya to Dhubri C.Kottapuramto Kollam D.None of the above

राष्ट्रीय जल मार्ग संख्या -1 किन दो स्थानों के मध्य पड़ता है-

A. हल्दिया-इलाहाबाद B.सदिया-धुवरी

C. कोत्त्यापुरम-कोल्लम D.इनमे से कोई नहीं

(1)

Q 16.Most of India's foreign trade is carried through-

A. Land and sea B.Sea and air

C. Land and air D.Sea

भारत का अधिकांश विदेशी व्यापार वहन होता है -

A.स्थल और समुन्द्र B.स्थल और समुन्द्र

C.स्थल और वायु D.समुन्द्र

Q 17. Which one of the following river is highly polluted-

A.Brahmaputra B.Satluj

C.Yamuna D. Godavari

निम्नलिखित में से सर्वाधिक प्रदूषित नदी कौन सी है-

A.ब्रहमप्त्र B.सत्लज

C.यम्ना D.गोदावरी

Q18.which of the following is the cause of acid rain ?(1)

A.water pollution B.land pollution

C.Noise pollution D. Air pollution

निम्नलिखित में से कौनसा अम्ल वर्षा का एक कारण है-

A. जल प्रदुषण B. भूमि प्रदुषण

C.शोर प्रद्षण D. वाय् प्रद्षण

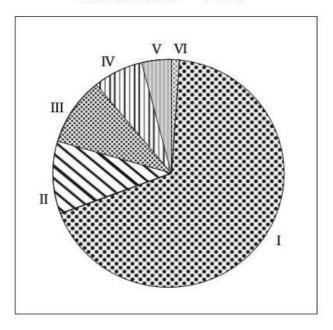
#### **SECTION - B**

19. Who introduced the concept of "Stop and Go Determinism"? Mention any two characteristics of this concept. (3)

"रुको और जाओ निश्चयवाद" की संकल्पना को किसने प्रस्तुत किया ? इस संकल्पना की किन्ही दो विशेषताओं को लिखिए |

- **20**.Describe three major problems associated with urban waste disposal in India. **(3)** भारत में नगरीय अपशिष्ट निपटान से सम्बंधित किन्ही तीन मुख्य समस्याओं की व्याख्या कीजिये
- 21. Study the diagram given below and answer the question that follow: 1X3=3

Fig. 21 : India : Distribution of urban population (%), according to size class of urban centre — 2011



- (21.1) Which class has the largest urban population?
- (21.2) Which class has the lowest urban population?
- (21.3)Into how many classes are urban centres classified by the Census of India?

नीचे दिए गए चित्र का अध्ययन कीजिये और उसके नीचे दिए गए प्रश्नों का उत्तर लिखिए।

- 21.1) किस वर्ग में अधिकतम नगरीय जनसँख्या है?
- (21.2) किस वर्ग में न्यूनतम नगरीय जनसँख्या है ?

(21.3)भारत की जनगणना ने नगरों को कितने वर्गों में बांटा है?

**22**. Discuss any five patterns of rural settlement patterns develop in different parts of the world on the basis of forms and shapes. (3)

विश्व के किन्ही पाँच प्रकार के ग्रामीण बस्ति प्रतिरूपों का आकार एवं प्रकार के आधार पर वर्णन करें | OR

Name the five type of Urban settlement in the world . Write one main feature of any one type . दुनिया में पांच प्रकार के शहरी बस्तियों के नाम दीजिये। किसी एक प्रकार की एक मुख्य विशेषता लिखिए।

#### **SECTION-C**

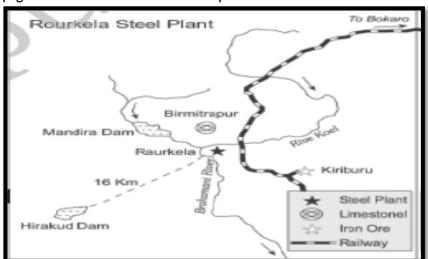
23. Classify industries on the basis of raw material used and briefly explain each of them.

(5)

कच्चे माल के आधार पर उद्योगों का वर्गीकरण कीजिये और प्रत्येक का संक्षिप्त विवरण दें। OR

What is tourism? Analyse any four tourist attraction in the world . पर्यटन क्या है? द्निया में किसी भी चार पर्यटक आकर्षण का विश्लेषण करें

**24**. Study the map given below and answer the questions that follow: - 1+1+2+1=(5)



- 5. Name the state in which this steel plant is located.
- 6. What is the source of iron or efort his plant?
- 7. Name the two sources providing water and power to this steel plant.
- 8. Name the country which help to establish this steel plant.

दिए गए मानचित्र का अधययन कर निम्नलिखित प्रश्नों के उत्तर दीजिये:-

- १. उस राज्य का नाम बताइए, जिसमे यह संयंत्र स्थित है |
- २. उस संयंत्र के लिए लौह अयस्क का क्या स्रोत है?
- 3. उन दो स्रोतों के नाम बताइए, जो इस इस्पात संयंत्र को जल तथा उर्जा प्रदान करते हैं | ४.यह संयंत्र किस देश के सहयोग से स्थापित किया गया ?
- **25**. Describe the five advantages of pipeline transport over other modes of transport in the world.

अन्य परिवहन के साधनों की तुलना में पाइपलाइन परिवहन के किन्ही पांच लाभ का वर्णन कीजिये | (5)

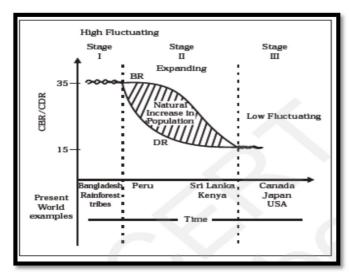
OR

Explain the significance of each of the transport and communication services available in the world.

द्निया में उपलब्ध परिवहन और संचार सेवाओं में से प्रत्येक के महत्व को समझाओ।

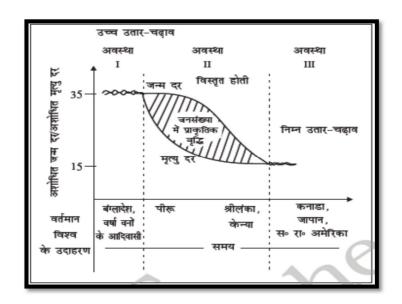
26. Study the diagram and answer the following questions:-

(1+1+1+2=5)



- 5. Name the stage which shows high fluctuatin grate of population growth.
- 6. Why is the population growth of Srilanka expanding? Give one reason.
- 7. Give one reason responsible for low fluctuation in population growth in stage III.
- 8. Explain the first stage of demographic transition theory.

निम्न चित्र का अध्ययन कीजिये तथा दिए गए प्रश्नों के उत्तर दीजिये:-



- 5. उस अवस्था का नाम बताइए जिसमे जनसंख्या वृद्धि दर अत्यधिक अस्थिर है |
- 6. श्रीलंका की जनसँख्या वृद्धि का विस्तार क्यों हो रहा है ? एक कारण लिखिए |
- 7. तीसरी अवस्था में जनसंख्या वृद्धि में निम्न अस्थिरता के लिए कोई एक जिम्मेदार कारण लिखिए।
- 8. जनांकिकीय संक्रमण सिध्दांत की पहली अवस्था का वर्णन कीजिये।

27. What recent steps have been taken for development and modernisation of Indian railways?(5) भारतीय रेलवे के विकास और आधुनिकरण के लिए हाल ही में कौन से कदम उठाए गए हैं?

Explain the changing pattern of the international trade of India.

भारत के अंतर्राष्ट्रीय व्यापार की बदलती प्रकृति का वर्णन कीजिये।

**28**. What is meant by growth of population? Discuss briefly four phases of population growth in India during the twentieth century. (5)

जनसँख्या वृद्धि से आपका क्या अभिप्राय है ? बीसवी शताब्दी में भारत की जनसँख्या वृद्धि की चार अवस्थाओं का वर्णन कीजिये

OR

What is Human development? Describe the four pillars of human development. मानव विकास किसे कहते है? मानव विकास के चार स्तंभों का वर्णन कीजिए.

- 29. On the given out line map of India locate the following geographical features(Any five). दिए गए भारत के मानचित्र में निम्नलिखित भोगोलिक स्थानों को दर्शाओं (कोई भी पांच) (5)
- 7. The State with highest density of population [2011] सर्वाधिक जनसंख्या घनत्व वाला राज्य[2011]

8. Largest coffee producing state of India.

भारत का सबसे बड़ा कहवा उत्पादक राज्य।

9. The oldest oil field in India

भारत का प्राचीनतम तेल क्षेत्र

10. Durgapur steel plant.

दुर्गापुर इस्पात स्यंत्र

11. Chhotanagpur Industrial Region.

छोटानागप्र औदयोगिक क्षेत्र

12. State with highest literacy

सर्वोच्च साक्षरता वाला राज्य

7. Major sea port located in Kerala.

केरल में स्थित प्रमुख समुद्री बंदरगाह

**30**. In the given map of world, features are shown by A, B, C, D and E, identify the features with the help of information given below and write their names on the lines marked on the map.

(5)

नीचे दिये गए मानचित्र में A,B,C,D,E अंकित भौगोलिक स्थलाकृतिओ को पहचानिए एवं उनके नाम अंकित रेखा पर लिखिए |

A. An area of extensive commercial grain farming.

विस्तृत वाणिज्य अनाज कृषि का एक क्षेत्र।

B. A member, nation of OPEC.

OPEC राष्ट्र देशो का सदस्य

C. A food gathering area

एक खादय संग्रहण क्षेत्र

D. Ashippingcanal

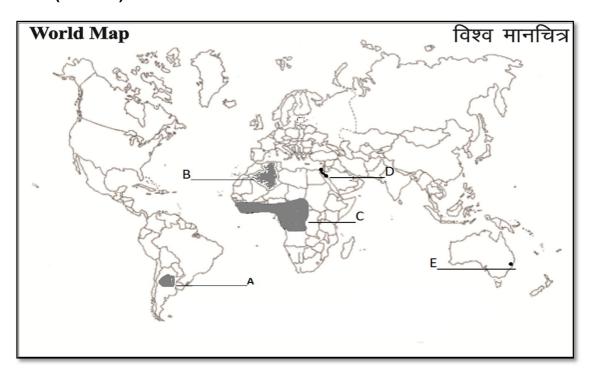
एक नौ परिवहन नहर

E. A major port of Australia.

ऑस्ट्रेलिया का एक प्रमुख पत्तन



## Q. 30 (WORLD)



SAMPLE PAPER-2 KENDRIYA VIDYALAYA SANGATHAN DELHI REGION GEOGRAPHY (Code-029) – XII MARKING SCHEME		
Q. No.	Time: 3 Hrs. M.M: 70	Marks
1	(c) Neo determinism OR	1/2+1/2
	B.Quantitative revolution	
2	A. Africa	1
3	D.15 to 59 years OR c.Medical/educational facilities	1
4	D.Floriculture OR C.Basic industries	1
5	B.Quarternary activities	1
6	D. Petroleum	1
7	C.Venezuela	1
8	C.Linear C.Linear	1
9	B.Mega cities	1
10	D.Bihar	1
11	C.Work& Employment	1
12	C.Kerala	1
13	C.Salinasation of soils	1
14	A.Irrigation	1
15	A. Haldia to Allahabad	1
16	B.Sea and air	1
17	C. Yamuna	1
18	D. Air pollution	1
19	Griffith Taylor introduced the "Stop and Go Determinism".  Reflects a middle path between the ideas of environmental determinism & possibilism.  Also known as neo-determinism.  It shows that neither is there a situation of absolute necessity nor is there a condition of absolute freedom.	3
	Emphasizes in solving the problems without damaging the environment	
20	<ol> <li>Urban are as are generally marked by over crowding, congestion, inadequate facilities to support the fast growing population and cosequent poor sanitary conditins and foul air.</li> <li>Solid wastes cause health hazard through creation of</li> </ol>	3

	obnoxious smell and harbouring of flies and rodents, which act as carriers of diseases like typhoid, diptheria, diarrhoea, malaria, dengue, chickengunia and cholera, etc.  These wastes cause frequentnuisanceas and when the sea recarel essly handled, spread by wind and splittered through rain water.  Concentration of industrial units in and around urban centres gives rise to disposal of industrial wastes. The dumping of industrial waste in to river leads to water pollution.	
21	(21.1) class I (21.2) class VI (21.3) 6	3
22	Patterns of rural settlements are influenced by the site of the village, the surrounding topography and terrain.  On the basis of forms and shapes are:-  1. Linear Pattern  2. Rectangular Pattern  3. Circular Pattern  4. Star like Pattern  5. T-Shaped, Y-Shaped, Cross-Shaped or Cruciform Settlements. (Characteristics of each pattern)  OR  Urban centre are chosen as - town, city, conurbation, megalopolis, million city on the basis of size, ability of services and functions. (Explain each of the above mentioned types)	3
23	On the basis of the raw materials used, the industries are classified as: (a) agro-based; (b)mineral based; (c) chemical based; (d) forest based: (e) animal based. (Brief explain of each).  OR  Tourism is travel which is done for the purpose of recreation rather than business.  The four factors which attracts tourists in the world are as follows- 1-climate 2-landscape 3-history and art 4- culture and economy Any other relevant point	5

24	3. Odisha	5
	4. Iron oreis obtained from Sundergarh and keonjhar districts	
	from a distance not more than 77 km.	
	3.Water and power is provided to this plant from Hirakund Dam	
	and Mandira Dam (River Mahanadi and Brahamani)	
	4.Germany	
25	Pipe line can be laid through difficultterrain as well as under	5
	water.	
	2. Initial cost of laying pipeline is high but subsequent cost of	
	maintenance and operation is low.	
	3. Pipeline ensures steady supply.	
	4. It minimised transip losses and delays.	
	5. pipeline operation involves very low consumption of energy.	
	6. It is quick, cheap, efficient and environment friendly mode	
	oftrans portation.	
	OR	
	Significance of various transport services are as follows-	
	8- Road transport	
	9- Railway transport	
	10-water transport	
	11-air transport	
	12-pipeline transport	
	13-satellite communication	
	14-cyber space comm.	
26	4. Stage I	5
	<ol><li>High fertility rate and reduced mortality rate.</li></ol>	
	<ol><li>Both fertility and mortality rate have declined considerably.</li></ol>	
	4. High fertility and high mortality, population growth slow, people	
	primarily engaged in agricultural activities, very low literacy, low level	
	of technology, low life expectancy and two hundred years ago all	
	countries are in this stage.	
27	Recent development and modernisation steps taken in Indian	5
	railways are:	
	Extensive programme to convert the metre and narrow gauge to	
	broad gauge.  2. The steam engines have been replaced by diesel and electric	
	engines.	
	3. Speed of new trains has increased.	
	4. The environment of the stations has improved. There have been	
	computerized reservations, automatic electric signals, loading	
	facilities (container service) etc.	
	5. Introduction metro rails in metropolitan cities.	
	6. Improved passenger services on the trains, include AC coaches,	
	pantry services, ATM	
	Family 2011,000,111	

	machines, medical services etc	
	OR	
	Changein Exports	
	6. The share of agriculture and allied products has declined.	
	7. Shares of mineral ore remained constant.	
	8. Share of petroleum and its products increased.	
	9. The decline intraditional items due to tough competition like	
	jute products.  10. Significant growth in the export of engineering and leather	
	goods.	
	Change in Imports	
	<ol><li>Share of food grains import is replaced by petroleum and fertilisers.</li></ol>	
	6. Import of capital goods has increased.	
	7. Import of edibleoil and pulses in place of food items.	
	Gold and silver imports has increased.	
	Import of professional instruments has also increased	
28	Growth of population is the change in the number of people living in	5
	particular area between two points of time. Its rate is expressed in	
	percentage.	
	Phases of Population Growth in India	
	<ul><li>5. Period of stagnant growth rate (before 1921)</li><li>6. Period of steady growth rate (1921 – 1951)</li></ul>	
	7. Period of steady growth rate (1921 – 1931)	
	8. Period of declining growth rate (after 1981)	
	Explain each point	
	OR	
	Human development that enlarge people's choices & improves their lives.	
	5. Equity	
	6. Sustainability	
	7. Productivity	
	8. Empowerment	
	Explanation with examples	
29	Map work of India	1
20	1 Demons of Associate	(5)
30	1. Pampas of Argentina	(5)
	Algeria     Zaire basin	
	4. Suez canal	
	5. Sydney	
	•	

#### **SAMPLE PAPER-3**

केन्द्रीय विद्यालय संगठन (दिल्ली संभाग)

### KENDRIYA VIDYALAYA SANGATHAN (DELHI REGION)

भूगोल (सैद्धान्तिक) / GEOGRAPHY (THEORY)

#### कक्षा -12/CLASS-XII

(Unsolved)

निर्धारित समय : 3 घंटे अधिकतम अंक : 70

Time allowed: 3 hours Maximum Marks: 70

#### सामान्य निर्देश:

- (1) इस प्रश्न पत्र में कुल 30 प्रश्न हैं I
- (2) सभी प्रश्न अनिवार्य हैं I
- (3) प्रश्न संख्या1 से 18 तक बहु —िवकल्पीय प्रश्न हैं I प्रत्येक प्रश्न 1 अंक का है I प्रत्येक प्रश्न में दिए गए चार विकल्पों में से सही विकल्प चुनकरउत्तर पुस्तिका में लिखें I
- (4) प्रश्न संख्या 19 से 22 तक लघु उत्तरीय प्रश्न हैं I प्रत्येक प्रश्न 3 अंक का है I प्रत्येक प्रश्न का उत्तर 80-100 शब्दों से अधिक नहीं होना चाहिए I
- (5) प्रश्न संख्या 23 से 28 तक दीर्घ उत्तरीय प्रश्न हैं I प्रत्येक प्रश्न 5 अंक का है I प्रत्येक प्रश्न का उत्तर 150 शब्दों से अधिक नहीं होना चाहिए I
- (6) प्रश्न संख्या 29 भारत के रेखा-मानचित्र पर भौगोलिक लक्षणों की स्थिति को उपयुक्त चिन्हों से दर्शाने से सम्बंधित हैं I यह प्रश्न 5 अंक का है I
- (7) प्रश्न संख्या 30 विश्व के रेखा-मानचित्र पर भौगोलिक लक्षणों को पहचानने तथा उनके नाम लिखने से सम्बंधित हैं I यह प्रश्न 5 अंक का है I
- (8) आपको दिए गए संसार तथा भारत के रेखा-मानचित्र को उत्तर-पु स्तिका से संलम्न अवश्य करें I
- (9) रेखा-मानचित्रों के रेखां कन के लिए स्टेन्सिलया टेम्प्लेट्स के उपयोग की अनुमित दी जाती है  $\, {
  m I}$

#### **General Instructions:**

- (1) There are 30 questions in all.
- (2) All questions are compulsory.
- (3) Question numbers 1 to 18 are multiple-choice questions carrying 1 marks each. Choose the correct option out of the four options given in each question and write it in your answer-book.
- (4) Question numbers 19 to 22 are short answer questions carrying 3 marks each. Answer to each of these questions should not exceed 80-100 words.
- (5) Question numbers 23 to 28 are long answer questions carrying 5 marks each. Answer to each of these questions should not exceed 150 words.
- (6) Question numbers 29 is related to locating and labelling of geographical features on the given outline map of India. This question carries 5 marks.
- (7) Question numbers 30 is related to identification of geographical features on the given outline map of world and writing their names. This question carries 5 marks.
- (8) Outline maps of the World and India provided to you must be attached within your answer-book.
- (9) Use of templates or stencils for drawing outline maps is allowed.

## **SECTION (A)**

1

- 1. Which one of the following countries has the lowest sex ratio in the world?
  - (a) Latvia

(b) Qatar

(c) United Arab Emirates

(d) Finland

OR

Which one of the following statements is not true about sex ratio?

- (a) It is the number of males per thousand females in India.
- (b) It is ratio between the number of women and men in the population.
- (c) It is important information about the status of women in a country.
- (d) None of the above.

निम्नलिखित में से किस देश का लिंग अनुपात निम्नतम है?

- (a) लैटविया
- (b) क़तर
- (c) संयुक्त अरब अमीरात
- (d) फ़िनलैंड

OR

निम्नलिखित में से कौन सा वाक्य लिंग अनुपात के संबंध में सही नहीं है?

- (a) प्रति हज़ार स्त्रियों पर पुरषों की संख्या.
- (b)जनसंख्या में स्त्रियों और प्रषों के बीच का अन्पात.
- (c) यह एक देश में स्त्रियों की दशा को व्यक्त करता है.
- (d) उपरोक्त में से कोई नहीं.
- 2. A population pyramid is used to:

1

- (a) rural urban composition. (b) Proportion of literate population
- (c) working population (d) age sex structure of the population

एक जनसंख्या पिरामिड कौन सी विशेषता परिलक्षित करता है?

- (a) ग्रामीण नगरीय संघटन (b) शिक्षित जनसंख्या का अनुपात
- (c) कार्यशील जनसंख्या
- (d)आय्-लिंग संरचना
- 3. Which one of the following does not follow monoculture?
- (a) Dairy farming
- (b) Plantation agriculture

1

- (c) Mixed Farming
- (d) Commercial farming

OR

Which one of the following statements is wrong about Kolkhoz?

- (a) It is based on social ownership of the means of production.
- (b) The farmers pool in all their resources.
- (c) It was introduced in erstwhile Soviet Union.
- (d) It was developed in western European countries like Denmark, Netherlands, etc.

निम्न में से कौन सी एकल कृषि नहीं है?

- (a) डेरी कृषि (b) रोपण कृषि
- (c)मिश्रित कृषि (d) वाणिज्य कृषि

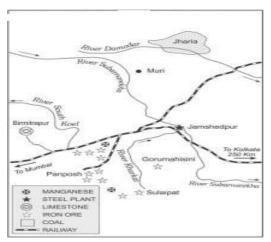
OR

निम्न में से कौन सा वाक्य कोलखोज़ के बारे में ग़लत है?	
(a) उत्पादन के साधनों पर समाज का स्वामित्व होता है .	
(b) सभी किसान अपने संसाधनों को साझा करतें हैं?	
(c) इस कृषि का प्रारम्भ पूर्व सोवियत संघ में हु आ.	
(d). इस कृषि का विकास पश्चिमी यूरोप के देशों जैसे डेनमार्क, नीदरलैंड आदि में हुआ. 4. Shifting cultivation is called Ladang in:	
<ul><li>(a) Mexico and Central America</li><li>(b) Indonesia and Malaysia</li><li>(c) North eastern states of India and Kerala</li><li>(d) both a and b</li></ul>	
Which one of the following crop is not a plantation crop?  (a) Coffee (b) Wheat  (c) Sugarcane (d) Rubber	
स्थानांतरणशील कृषि को लदांग कहाँ कहा जाता है?	
(a) मैक्सिको और मध्य अमेरिका (b) इंडोनेशिया	
(c) भारत के उत्तरी- पूर्वी राज्य और केरल (d) दोनों a व b OR	
निम्न में से कौन सी फ़सल रोपण फ़सल नहीं है?	
(a) कॉफ़ी $(b)$ गेंह्	
(c) गन्ना (d) रबड़	
5. Which one of the following pairs is correctly matched? 1 (a) Automobile industry Los Angeles (b) Shipbuilding Lusaka (c) Aircraft industry Florence (d)Iron-steel plant Pittsburgh निम्न में से कौन - सा एक जोड़ा सही मेल खाता है?	
(a) स्वचालित वाहन उद्योगलॉसएंजिल्स (b) पोत निर्माण उद्योग लूसाका	
(c) वायुयान निर्माण उद्योगफ्लोरेंस (d) <b>लौह इस्पात उद्योग</b> पिट्सबर्ग 6. Which one of the following activities is related to quaternary sector?	Ĺ
(a) Manufacturing computers <b>(b)</b> University teaching (c) Paper and Raw pulp production (d) Printing books निम्नलिखित में से कौन सा क्रियाकलाप चतुर्थ सेक्टर से सम्बंधित हैं?	
(a)सगणक विनिर्माण (b) विश्वविद्यालयी अद्ध्यापन	
(c) कागज़ और कच्ची लुगदी (d) पुस्तकों का मुद्रण	
(c) मार्गान् जार फल्पा पुगर्पा (u) पुस्तमा मा मुद्रण	

registered jobs and total rever (a) Tourism (c) Communication	tivities has become the world's single largest tertiary activity in total nue? 1 (b) Transport (d) Telecommunication क्रिया कुल पंजीकृत रोजगारों तथा कुल राजस्व की दृष्टि से विश्व का
सबसे बड़ा क्षेत्र बन गया है?	
(a) पर्यटन	(b) परिवहन
(c) संचार	(d) दूरसंचार
(c) BPOs have better business	s and increases efficiency manufacturing jobs can also be outsourced. s opportunities as compared to KPOs. tion among job seekers in the countries that outsource the job.
(a) बाह्यस्रोतन से लागतें घट	ती हैं और दक्षता में वृद्धि होती हैं.
(b) कभी कभी अभियांत्रिक औ	र विनिर्माण कार्यों की भी बाहयास्रोतन की जा सकती है.
(c) बी. पो. ओ. के पास के.	पी. ओ. की तुलना में बेहतर व्यावसायिक अवसर होते हैं.
(d) कार्यों के बाहयास्रोतन कर	ने वाले देशों में काम की तलाश करने वालों में असंतोष पाया जाता है.
<ul><li>(a) Jean Gottman</li><li>(c) Lewis Mumford</li></ul>	ne capital of Australia in 1912 by: 1 (b) Patrick Geddes (d) Walter Burley Griffin की योजना ऑस्ट्रेलिया की राजधानी के रूप में की?
(a) जीनगोटमैन	(b) पैट्रिकगिडिज
(c) लेविसममफोर्ड	(d) वाल्टरबरलीग्रिफ़िन
10. Which one of the following	ng urban agglomeration has the highest share of in migrant population?
(a) Bengaluru UA	(b) Delhi UA
(c) Mumbai UA	(d) Chennai UA
	रीय समूहन (UA) में प्रवासी जनसंख्या का अंश सर्वाधिक है?
(a) बंगलुरुUA	(b) दिल्ली UA
(c) मुंबई UA	(d) चेन्नई UA
	ing statements is not true about Swachh Bharat Mission?  1  -convection energy resources.

(d) Making people free from illness	y of clean energy Fuel LPG to all households in rural areas. and ailment.
	स्वच्छ भारत अभियान के बारे में सही नहीं है?
(a) अपरम्परागत ऊर्जा संसाधनों को	बढावा देना.
(b) प्रत्येक घर में पीने का पानी प्र	दान करना.
(c) ग्रामीण क्षेत्रों में LPG ईधन की अ	ापूर्ति का प्रावधान करना.
(d) लोगों को बिमारियों से मुक्त व	न्रना.
<ul><li>(a) Chandigarh</li><li>(c) Daman and Diu</li></ul>	on Territories of India has the highest literacy rate? 1 (b) Lakshadweep (d) Andaman and Nicobar Islands त प्रदेश में सर्वाधिक साक्षरता दर है?1
(a) चंडीगढ़	(b) लक्षद्वीप
(c) दमन और दीव	(d) अंडमान और निकोबार द्वीप
<ul><li>1,2,3, and 4 in size?</li><li>(a) Greater Mumbai, Bengaluru, K</li><li>(b) Delhi, Greater Mumbai, Kolkata</li><li>(c) Delhi Greater Mumbai, Chennai</li><li>(d) Greater Mumbai, Delhi, Kolkata</li></ul>	a, Chennai , Kolkata
(a) बृहत् मुंबई, बंगलुरु, कोलकता	चेन्नई.
(b) दिल्ली, बृहत् मुंबई,कोलकता, व	येन्नई.
(c) दिल्ली, बृहत् मुंबई, चेन्नई, के	
(d)बृहत् मुंबई, दिल्ली, कोलकता, 14. What was the level of urbanisat (a) 41.36%	चेन्नई.
सन 2011 में भारत में नगरीकरण व	न क्या स्तर था?
(c) 31.6%	b) 28.95% d) 21.45% cates are the major oil fields located?

(a) Assam	(b) Bihar	
(c) Rajasthan	(d) Tamil Nadu	
निम्नलिखित में से किस राज्य	में प्रमुख तेल क्षेत्र हैं?	
a) असम (b) बिहार		
(c) राजस्थान (d) तमिलनाडु		
16. When was NITI Ayog forme	ed? 1	
(a) 1 January 2015	(b) 1 January 2011	
(c) 1 January 2014	(d) 1 January 2019	
NITI आयोग का गठन कब हुः	<del>आ</del> ?	
(a) 1 जनवरी 2015	(b) 1 जनवरी 2011	
(c) 1 जनवरी 2014	(d) 1 जनवरी 2019	
17. On which river and between which two places does the National Water Way No. 1 lie? 1 (a) The Brahmaputra, Sadiya-Dhubri (b) The Ganga, Haldia-Allahabad (c) West Coast Canal, Kottapuram to Kollam (d) None of them राष्ट्रीय जल मार्ग संख्या -1 किन दो स्थानों के मध्य पड़ता है-		
(a) ब्रहमपुत्र, सदिया-धुबरी (b) व	iगा, हल्दिया- इलाहबाद	
	ा से कोल्लाम (d) इनमे से कोई नहीं	
•	ports has been constructed to relieve the pressure at Chennai port? 1  (b) Paradwip port  (d) Ennore port	
निम्नलिखित में से कौन सा पत	तन चेन्नई पत्तन के दबाव को कम करने के लिए बनाया गया है?	
(a) कोच्चि पत्तन (b) पारादीपपत	त्तन	
(c) विशाखापट्नम पत्तन (d) प	रन्नोर पत्तन	
	SECTION (B)	
19 What do you understand by	naturalization of humans? Give example also. 3	
•	क्या समझते हैं? उदहारण भी लिखिए.	
<b>G</b>	actors that affect the distribution of population of the world? Briefly	
explain them.	3	
•	त करने वाले कौन से कारक हैं? संक्षेप में वर्णन कीजिये.	
	location of a major iron -steel plant given below and answer the	
questions that follow:	3	



- (21.1) Identify this steel plant and write its name
- (21.2) What is the source of water for this plant?
- (21.3) Name the source of coal for this plant?

नीचे दिया गया मानचित्र एक प्रमुख लौह - इस्पात उद्योग को दर्शाता है. इसका अध्ययन कीजिये व निम्न प्रश्नों के उत्तर दीजिये.

- (21.1) इस लौह- इस्पात उद्योग का नाम लिखिये.
- (21.2) इस उदयोग के जल का स्रोत क्या है?
- (21.3) इस उदयोग के लिए कोयला कहाँ से प्राप्त होता है?
- 22. What is watershed management? What programmes have been initiated by the central and state governments of Indiafor watershed management? 1+2=3

OR

It is said that the water resources in India have been depleting very fast. Briefly explain the factors responsible for depletion of water resources?

जल संभर प्रबंधन किसे कहतें हैं? केंद्रीय और राज्य सरकारों ने जल संभर प्रबंधन के लिए कौन से कार्यक्रम श्रूक किये हैं?

OR

यह कहा जाता है कि भारत में जल संसाधनों में तेज़ी से कमी आ रही है. जल संसाधनों की कमी के लिए उत्तरदायी कारकों की विवेचना कीजिए.

## **SECTION (C)**

23 . What is human development? How is human development measured? 2+3=5 OR

Which organisation publishes the human development report every year? Briefly explain the approaches to human development.

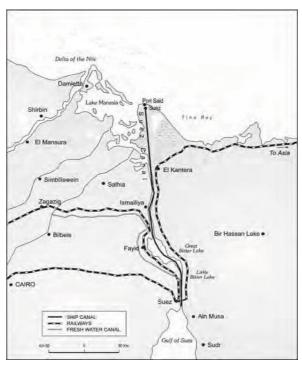
मानव विकास किसे कहतें हैं? मानव विकास को कैसे मापा जाता है?

OR

कौन सी संस्था मानव विकास की रिपोर्ट को प्रकाशित करती हैं? मानव विकास के उपागमों का संक्षेप में वर्णन कीजिये.

5

- 24. Study the map carefully and answer the question that follows:
- (24.1) Name the famous canal shown in the map.
- (24.2) which two water bodies are connected by this canal.
- (24.3) Name the two end ports of this canal.
- (24.4) what is the total length of same canal.
- (24.5) what is the importance of this canal?



निम्न मानचित्र का सावधानीपूर्वक अध्ययन कीजिये व निम्लिखित प्रश्नों के उत्तर लिखिए.

- (24.1) आरेख में दर्शायी गयी प्रसिद्ध नहर का नाम लिखिए.
- (24.2) यह नहर कौन सी दो जल राशियों को जोड़ती है?
- (24.3) इस नहर के दो अंतिम छोरों के पत्तनों के नाम लिखिये.
- (24.4) इस नहर की क्ल लम्बाई कितनी है?
- (24.5) इस नहर का क्या महत्व है ?

25. Why are the ports called gateways of international trade? Briefly explain any three types of ports based on specialised functions.

2+3=5

OR

How are ports helpful for trade? Give a classification of ports on the basis of their location.

पत्तनों को अंतर्राष्ट्रीय व्यापार का प्रवेश द्वार क्यों कहा जाता है? विशिष्टिकृत क्रियाकलापों के आधारों पर किन्ही तीन प्रकार के पत्तनों का संक्षेप में वर्णन कीजिये.

OR

किस प्रकार पत्तन, व्यापार के लिए सहायक हैं? अवस्थिति के आधार पर पत्तनों का वर्गीकरण कीजिये.

26. What are the problems of Indian agriculture? Briefly explain them.

5

भारतीय कृषि की समस्याओं का संक्षेप में वर्णन कीजिये.

27. Describe the problems of slums of India.

5

OR

What is solid waste? How does it cause health hazard?

1+4=5

भारत की गन्दी बस्तियों की समस्याओं का वर्णन कीजिये.

OR

ठोस कचरा किसे कहतें हैं? यह किस प्रकार स्वास्थ्य सम्बन्धी जोखिम का कारण बनता है?

28. What do you understand by growth of population? Briefly explain four distinct phases of growth of population in India. 1+4=5

OR

What is density of population? Explain the spatial distribution of density of population in India. जनसंख्य वृद्धि किसे कहतें हैं? भारत में जनसंख्या वृद्धि की चार सुस्पष्ट प्रावस्थाओं का संक्षेप में वर्णन कीजिये.

OR

जनसंख्या घनत्व किसे कहतें हैं? भारत में जनसंख्या घनत्व के स्थानिक वितरण का वर्णन कीजिये.

- 29. Locate and label any five of the following geographical features with appropriate symbols on the political outline map of India:

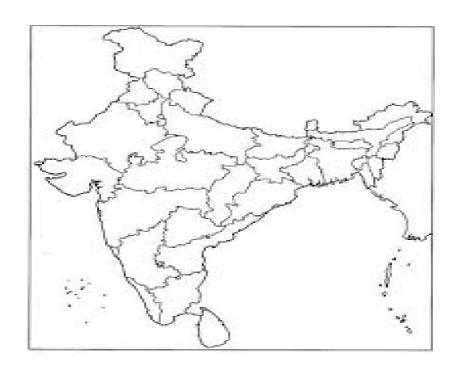
  5
- (29.1) State having the lowest HDI.
- (29.2) Kendujhar iron ore mine
- (29.3) Katni Bauxite mine
- (29.4) Tatipaka oil refinery
- (29.5) Guwahati international air port
- (29.6) North-south corridor
- (29.7) Kandla port

भारत के दिए गए राजनैतिक रेखा-मानचित्र में किन्ही पांच लक्षणों उपयुक्त चिन्हों से दर्शाइए और उनके नाम लिखिए:

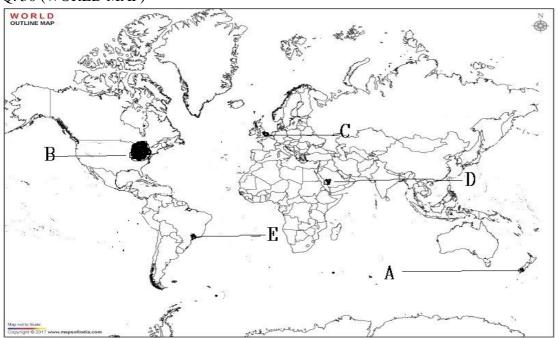
- (29.1) न्यूनतम HDI वाला राज्य
- (29.2) केन्द् झर लौह अयस्क की खान
- (29.3) कटनी बॉक्सइट
- (29.4) तातिपाका तेल शोधन कारखाना
- (29.5) ग्वाहाटी अंतर्राष्ट्रीय वाय् पत्तन
- (29.6) उत्तर दक्षिण गलियारा
- (29.7) कांडला पत्तन
- 30. On the given political map of the world, following five features are shown. Identify these features with the help of the given key and write them on the blanks marked A,B,C,D and E.
- A. A country where commercial live stock is reared.
- B. An industrial region
- C. A major sea port
- D. A major airport
- E. A mega city

दिए गए संसार के राजनैतिक रेखा मानचित्र में पांच लक्षण A, B, C, D और E से दिखाये गए हैं। मानचित्र की कुंजी की सहायता से उन्हें पहचानिए और मानचित्र पर अंकित रेखाओं पर उन लक्षणों के सही नाम लिखिए.

- A. वाणिज्य पश्धन पालन करने वाला एक राज्य.
- B. एक औदयोगिक क्षेत्र
- C. एक प्रमुख समुद्री पत्तन.
- D. एक प्रमुख वायु पत्तन.
- E. एक मेगा शहर
- Q. 29 (INDIA MAP)



## Q. 30 (WORLD MAP)



## **SECTION-9**

## MAP BASED QUESTIONS

## **BOOK-I**

## FUNDAMENTALS OF HUMAN GEOGRAPHY

# CHAPTER-I HUMAN GEOGRAPHY-NATURE AND SCOPE NO MAP

# CHAPTER -2 THE WORLD POP. -DISTRIBUTION, DENSITY AND GROWTH

- Q1.- Show the following on the outline political map of the world-
- A-Country with largest population (China)
- B- Country with largest area (Russia)
- C- Country with highest growth rate of pop. in the world (Liberia)
- Q.2 Show the largest country in each continent

North America- Canada (2.1)

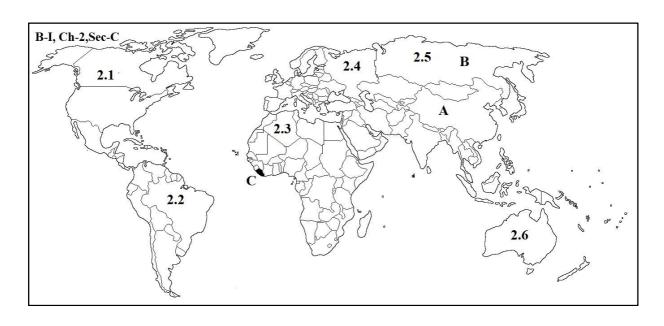
Latin America- Brazil (2.2)

Africa - Algeria (2.3)

Europe - Russia (2.4)

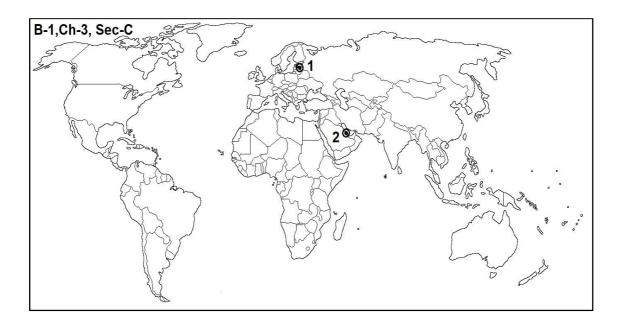
Asia - Russia (2.5)

Oceania - Australia (2.6)



## **CHAPTER-3 POPULATION COMPOSITION**

Q1. Country with highest sex-ratio in the world Ans- Latvia, 85 males /100 females, 2015)
Q2. Country with lowest sex-ratio in the world Ans- Qatar, 300 males/100 females, 2015)



## CHAPTER -4 HUMAN DEVELOPMENT

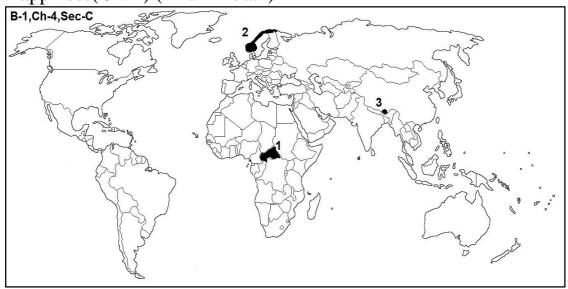
Q1. A country having the lowest rank in Human Development index 2015

(Ans –Central African Republic -188<sup>th</sup>)

Q2. A country having the highest rank in Human Development index 2015

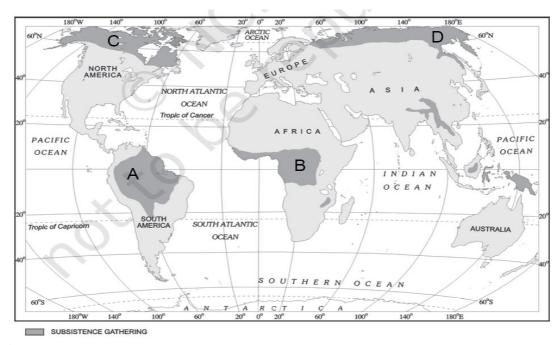
(Ans - Norway-1<sup>st</sup>)

Q3. A country who measures its progress by Gross National Happiness(GNH) (Ans- Bhutan)



## CHAPTER -5 PRIMARY ACTIVITIES

Q1.Identify the following areas of Subsistence gathering on the outline physical map of world—



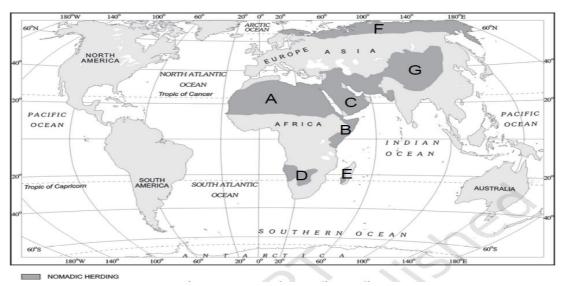
A- Amazon Basin

B- Tropical area of africa

C- Northern Canada

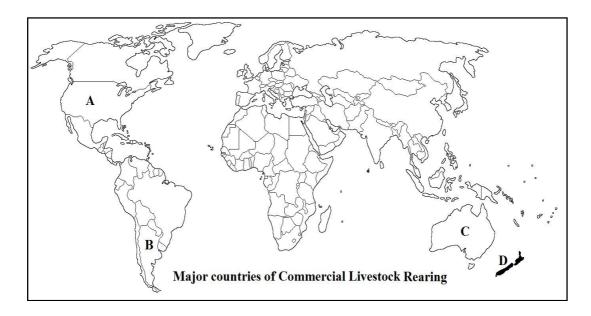
D- Northern Eurasia

Q2.Identify the following areas of Nomadic Herding on the outline physical map of world -



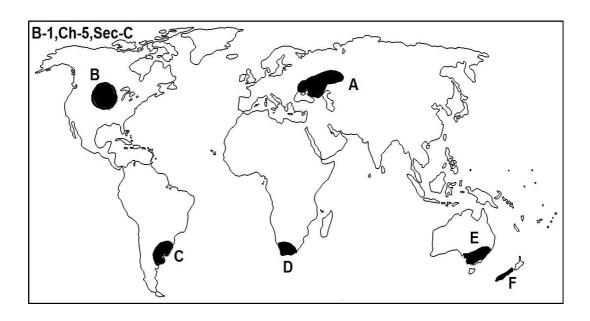
Ans-

- A- Sahara Desert (Herding Sheeps, Goats & camels)
- B-Tropical Africa (or Somali peninsula) (Herding Cattle)
- C- Arabian peninsula
- D- Kalahari Desert
- E- Madagascar Island
- F- Tundra region of Eurasia
- Q3.Identify the following Countries involve in Commercial Livestock rearing on the outline political map of world -



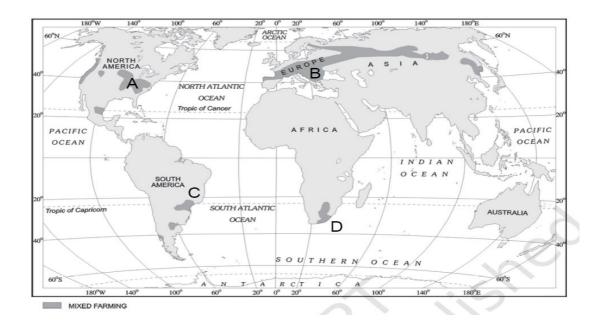
- A- USA
- B- Argentina
- C- Australia
- D- New Zealand

Q4.Identify the following areas of extensive commercial grain farming on the outline political map of world-



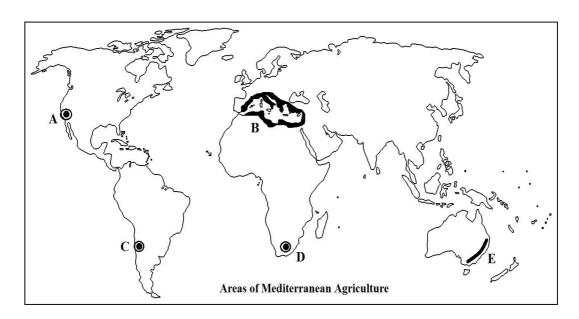
Ans- A-Europe (**Steppes**) B-North America(**Prairies**) C-Argentina(**Pampas**)D-South Africa(**Velds**) E-Australia(**Downs**)F-New Zealand (**Canterbury plains**)

Q5.Identify the following areas of mixed farming on the outline physical map of world -



- A- Eastern North America
- B- Northern Western Europe
- C- Southern part of Brazil
- D- Southern part of Africa

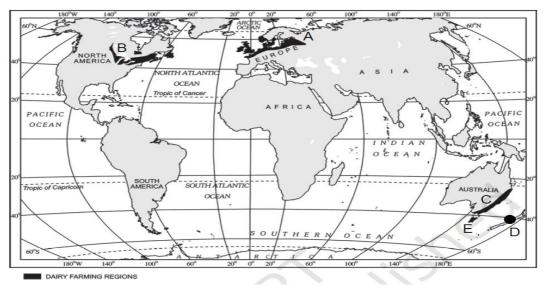
Q6.Identify the following areas of mediterranean agriculture on the outline physical map of world -



### Ans-

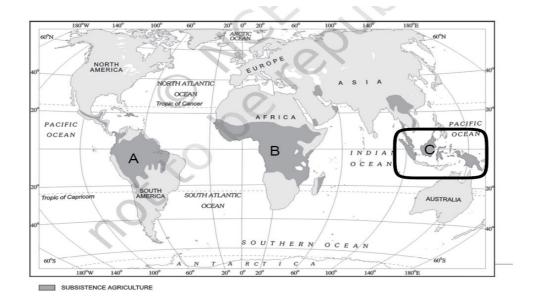
- A- Southern California
- B- Coastal areas of Mediterranean sea
- C- Central Chile
- D- South Africa
- E- South West part of Australia

Q7.Identify the following areas of Dairy farming on the outline physical map of world -



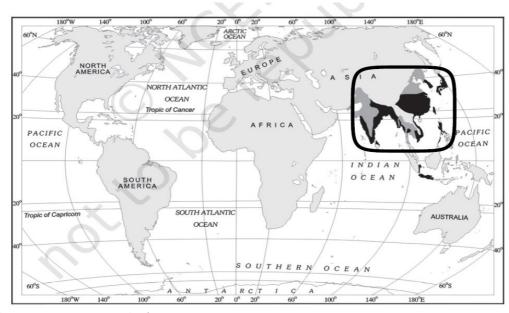
- A- North Western Europe
- B- Canada
- C- South East Australia
- D- New Zealand
- E- Tasmania

Q8.Identify the following areas of primitive subsistence agriculture on the outline physical map of world -



- A- Tropical part of South America
- B- Tropical part of Africa
- C- South-East Asia

Q9.Identify the following area of Intensive subsistence agriculture on the outline physical map of world -



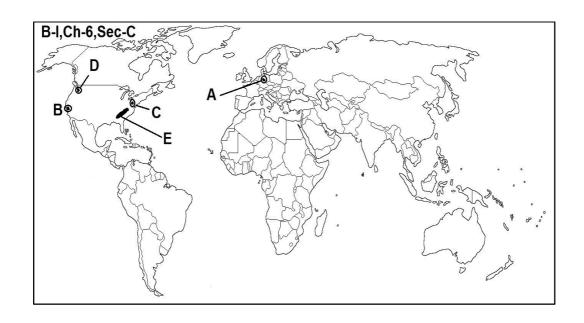
Ans- Monsoon Asia

## **CHAPTER-6**

## **SECONDARY ACTIVITIES**

- Q.1- Show the following on the outline political map of the world-
- A. Ruhr coal field (Germany)
- B. Technopolis- silicon valley (San Francisco)
- C. Rust bowl of U.S.A (Pittsburg)
- D. Technopolis-silicon forest (seattle)
- E. Appalachian region

Ans-



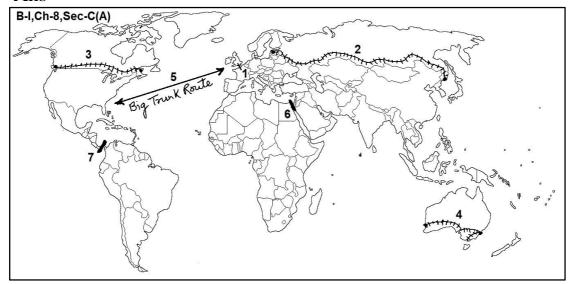
# CHAPTER-7 TERTIARY AND QUATERNARY ACTIVITIES NO MAP

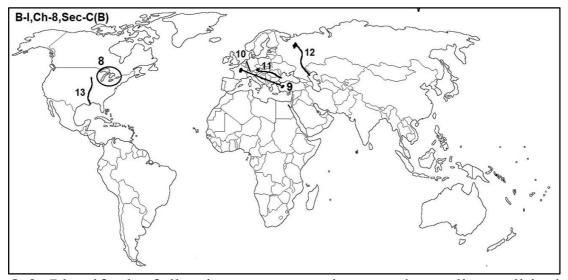
## **CHAPTER-8**

## TRANSPORT AND COMMUNICATION

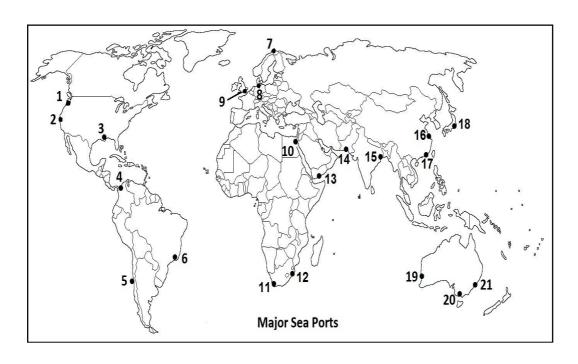
- Q.1- Show the following on the outline political map of the world-
- 1. Channel Tunnel (London to Paris)
- 2.Trans-siberian railway [St.Petersburg(West) to Vladivostok(East)]
- 3. Trans-canadian railway [Vancouver (West) to Halifax (East)]
- 4.Trans- Australian railway [Perth(West) to Sydney(East)]
- 5.Busiest sea route (North Atlantic Sea Route- Between NE USA & NW Europe) also called 'Big trunk route'.
- 6.Suez canal Joins Mediterranean sea(North) & Red sea(south)
- 7.Panama canal Joins Atlantic ocean(East) & Pacific ocean(West)
- 8. The Great lakes -St. Lawrence Seaway (River St. Lawrence connect Great lakes to North Atlantic Ocean )
- 9. Orient Express(Paris to istambul)
- 10.Rhine waterway In Europe-Starts from Basel(switzerland) & drains into North sea at Rotterdam(Netherlands)

- 11. Danube waterway In Europe starts from 'black forest & drains into 'black sea'
- 12. Volga waterways In Russia drains into Caspian Sea.
- 13.Mississippi waterways In USA drains into Gulf of Mexico Ans-





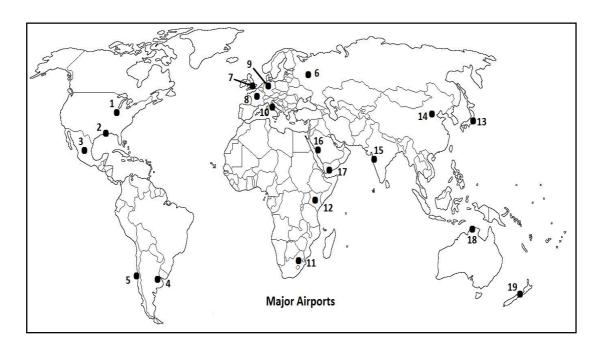
Q.2- Identify the following sea ports given on the outline political map of the world and write their names-



Ans-

Continents	Major sea ports		
North America	1-Vancouver	2-San Francisco	3-New York
South America	4-colon	5- Valparaiso	6- Rio De janeiro
Europe	7- North cape	8- Hamburg	9- London
Africa	10- Suez	11- Cape town	12- Durban
Asia	13- Aden	14- Karachi	15- Kolkata
	16- Shanghai	17-Hongkong	18- Yokohama
Australia	19- Perth	20- Melbourne	21- Sydney

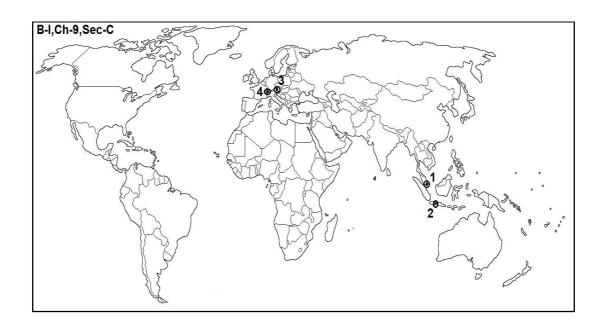
Q.2- Identify the following air ports given on the outline political map of the world and write their names-



Continents	Major Air ports		
North America	1-Chicago 2- New Orleans 3- Mexico city		
South America	4- Buenos Aires 5- Santiago		
Europe	6- Moscow 7- London 8-Paris		
	9- Berlin 10- Rome		
Africa	11- Johannesberg 12- Nairobi		
Asia	13- Tokyo 14- Beijing 15- Mumbai		
	16- jedda 17-Aden		
Australia	18- Darwin 19- Wellington		

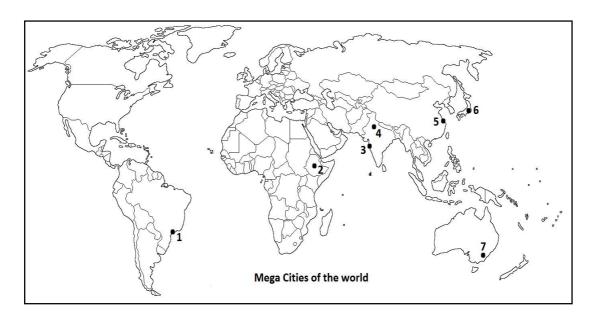
# CHAPTER -9 INTERNATIONAL TRADE

- Q.1- Show the following on the outline political map of the world-
- 1.One Entrepot port(Singapore)
- 2.Head quarters of ASEAN (Jakarta-Indonesia)
- 3. Head quarters of OPEC(Vienna-Austria)
- 4. Head quarters of WTO(Geneva-Switzerland)



# **CHAPTER -10 HUMAN SETTLEMENTS**

Q1.- Identify the following mega cities given on the outline political map of the world and write their names -



Ans-

- 1. Saopaulo 2. Addis Ababa (Capital of Ethiopia) 3. Mumbai
- 4.Delhi 5. Shanghai 6.Tokyo
- 7. Canberra (Capital of Australia)

# **BOOK-II**

# **INDIA- PEOPLE & ECONOMY**

# CHAPTER-1 POPULATION- DISTRIBUTION, DENSITY, GROWTH AND COMPOSITION

- Q1. Practice all the states of India on the political outline map of India.
- Q2.- Show the following on the outline political map of the India-
- 1. State with highest % of Rural Population. or State with lowest level of Urbanization (Himachal Pradesh)
- 2. State with highest % of Urban Population or State with highest level of Urbanization (Goa)
- 3.State with largest population.(U.P.)
- 4. State with lowest population. (Sikkim)
- 5. State with largest area. (Rajasthan)
- 6.State with smallest area. (Goa)
- 7. State with highest growth rate of population. (Meghalaya)
- 8. State with lowest growth rate of population.( Nagaland)
- 9. State with highest density of population. (Bihar)
- 10. State with lowest density of population. (Arunachal Pradesh)
- 11.State with highest sex ratio.(Kerala)
- 12. State with lowest sex ratio. (Haryana)

Ans- For the above question, answers are written against them. Mark the answers(States) on the outline political outline map of India.

# CHAPTER-2 MIGRATION - TYPES, CAUSES AND CONSEQUENCES

- Q1.- Show the following on the outline political map of the India-
- 1. State with highest in-migration.(Maharashtra)
- 2. State with highest out-migrants. (Bihar)
- 3. Urban Agglomeration receive highest in-migration.(Greater Mumbai)
- 4. Highest in-migrants in India from neighbouring country.( Bangladesh)

Ans- For the above question, answers are written against them. Mark the answers(States) on the outline political outline map of India.

# CHAPTER-3 HUMAN DEVELOPMENT

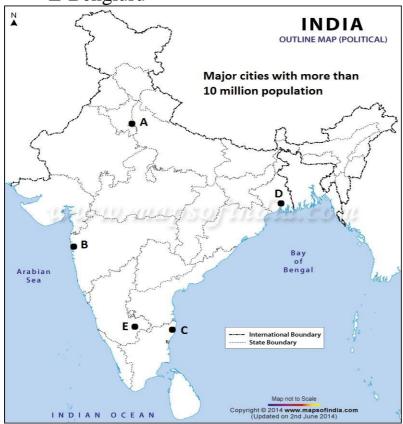
- Q1.- Show the following on the outline political map of India-
- 1.State with highest literacy rate .(Kerala)
- 2.state with lowest literacy rate.(Bihar)
- 3. State with highest poverty ratio. (Chhattisgarh)
- 4. State with lowest poverty ratio. (Goa)
- 5. State with highest level of HDI (Kerala)
- 6.State with lowest level of HDI (Chhattishgarh)

Ans- For the above question, answers are written against them. Mark the answers(States) on the outline political outline map of India.

## **CHAPTER 4**

# (HUMAN SETTLEMENTS)

- Q1.- Show the following on the outline political map of the India-
  - 1.Metropolitan city with largest population.(Greater Mumbai)
  - 2.Metropolitan cities with population more than 10 million
    - A-Delhi
    - **B-Greater Mumbai**
    - C-Chennai
    - D-Kolkata
    - E-Bengluru



## **CHAPTER-5**

# (LAND RESOURCES AND AGRICULTURE)

- Q1.- Show the following on the outline political map of the India-
- 1.Largest Rice producing State. (West Bengal)
- 2. Largest Wheat producing State (U.P.)
- 3. Largest Cotton producing State (Gujarat)
- 4. Largest Jute producing State (West Bengal)
- 5. Largest Tea producing State (Assam)
- 6. Largest Coffee producing State Karnataka)
- 7. Largest Sugarcane producing State (U.P.)
- 8. Largest Jowar producing State (Maharashtra)
- 9.Largest pulses producing State (Madhya Pradesh)

Ans- For the above question, answers are written against them. Mark the answers(States) on the outline political outline map of India.

# CHAPTER -6 WATER RESOURCES

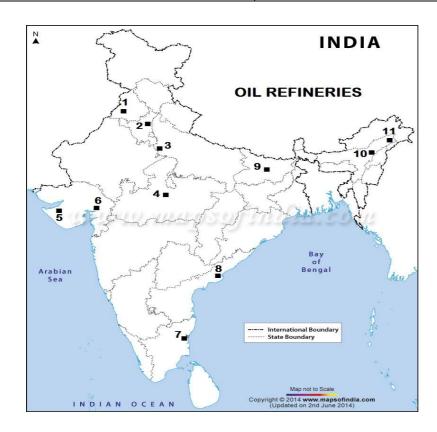
- Q1.- Show the following on the outline political map of the India-
- 1. The river which has the highest replenishable ground water resource in the country (The Ganga)
- 2.State with highest % of net irrigated area to total by well and tubewells.( Gujarat)
- 3. Ralegan-siddhi lies in which state of India (Maharashtra)
- 4.Neeru-Meeru program initiated in which state (Andhra Pradesh)
- 5. Arvarypanisansad program initiated in which state( Rajasthan)
- 6. South Indian state with highest ground water utilisation. (Tamil Nadu)

Ans- For the above question, answers are written against them. Mark the answers(States) on the outline political outline map of India.

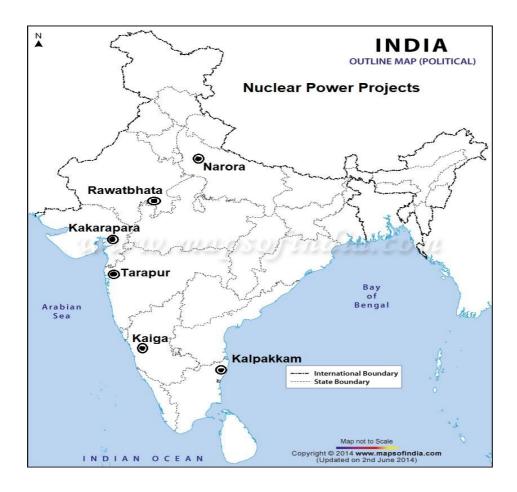
# CHAPTER -7 MINERAL AND ENERGY RESOURCES

Q1. Show major oil refineries on the political map of India.

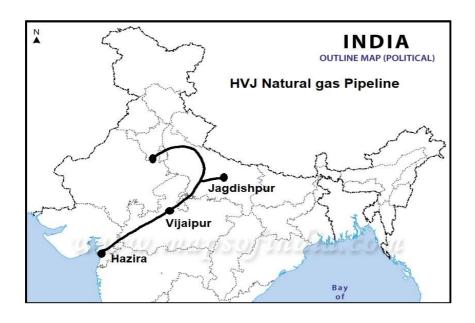
1-Bhatinda	7- Nagapattinam
2-Panipat	8- Tatipaka
3-Mathura	9- Barauni
4-Bina	10- Numaligarh
5-Jamnagar	11-Digboi
6-Koyali	



Q2.Show all the major Nuclear Power project on the political map of India.

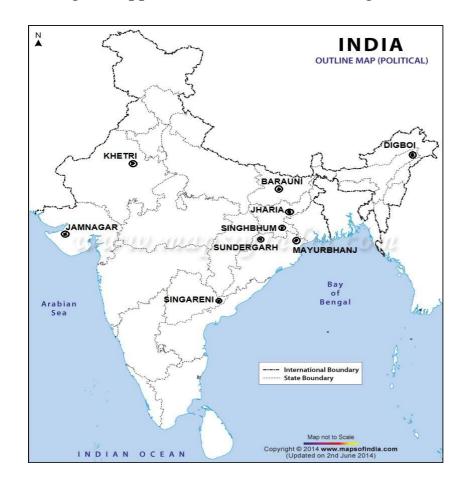


Q3. Show HVJ pipeline on the outline political map of India-



Q4. Show the following on the outline political map of the India-

- 1. Oldest oil refinery in India (Digboi ,Assam)
- 2.Largest Refinery in India (Jamnagar, Gujarat)
- 3.Largest coal mine in India (Jharia, Jharkhand)
- 4. Largest Iron-ore mine India (Mayurbhanj, Odisha)
- 5.One market based oil refinery in India (Barauni ,Bihar)
- 6. Largest copper mine in Rajasthan (khetri ,Rajasthan)
- 7.Largest manganese mine Odisha (Sundergarh)
- 8. Largest coal mine in Telangana (Singareni)
- 9.Largest copper mine in Jharkhand (Singhbhum)



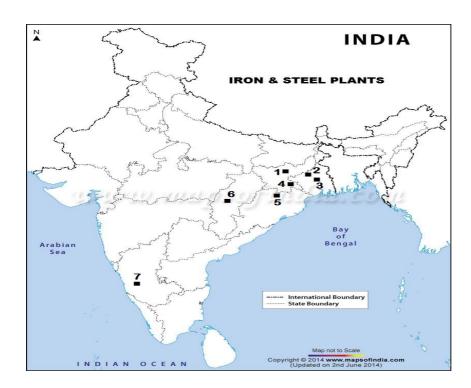
- Q5.- Show the following on the outline political map of the India-
- 1.Largest Manganese producing State (Odisha)
- 2.Largest Iron-ore producing State (Odisha)

- 3. Largest Bauxite producing State (Odisha)
- 4. Largest Copper producing State (Madhya Pradesh)
- 5. Largest Mica producing State (Andhra Pradesh)
- 6. Largest Coal producing State (Chhattisgarh)
- 7. One State known for the deposits of Brown coal (Lignite) (Tamil Nadu)

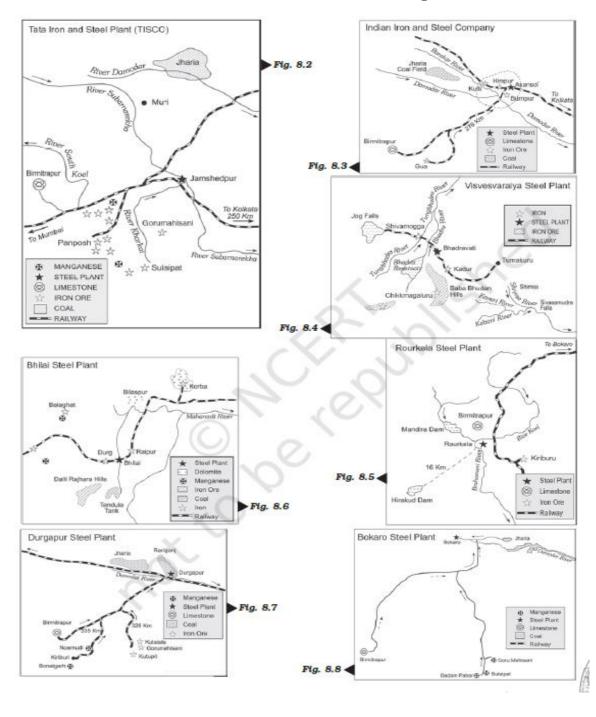
Ans- For the above question, answers are written against them. Mark the answers(States) on the outline political outline map of India.

# CHAPTER 8 MANUFACTURING INDUSTRIES

- Q1. Show the following Iron & steel plants on the political map of India.
- 1- Bokaro 2- Asansol 3- Durgapur 4- Jamshedpur
- 5- Raurkela 6- Bhilai 7- Bhadravati Ans-



- Q2. Study the given figures (8.2 to 8.8) of different Iron and steel plants of India and answer the following questions-
- 1) Identify and name the steel plant
- 2) In which state of India is it located?
- 3) Name the source of water /coal /Iron-ore for the plant .



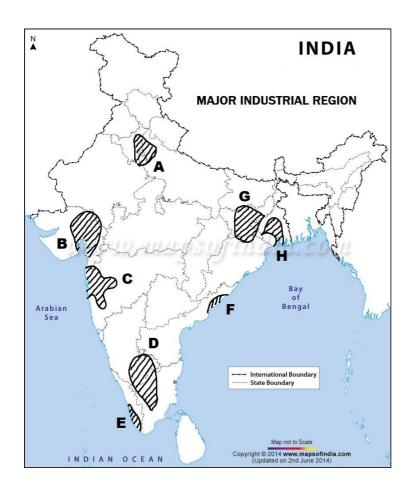
# Ans-

Fig.	Name of the	State	Source of	Source of	Source of
No.	Steel plant		water(Rivers)	Coal	Iron-ore
8.2	TISCO	Jharkhand	Subarnrekha	Jharia	Gurumahisani
	(Jamshedpur)			(Jharkhand)	(Mayurbhanj distt. of
					Odisha)
8.3	IISCO	W. Bengal	Damodar	Jharia	Gua (Singhbhumdistt.
	(Asansol)				of Jharkhand)
8.4	Visvesvariya	Karnataka	Tungabhadra	No Coal	Baba bhudan hills
	(Bhadravati)				(Chikmanglurudistt. of
					Karnataka)
8.5	Raurkela	Odisha	Brahamani	Jharia	Kiriburu
					(Jharkhand)
8.6	Bhilai	Chhattisgarh	Mahanadi	Korba	Dalhi-Rajhara hills
				(Chhattisgarh)	(Chhattisgarh)
8.7	Durgapur	W.Bengal	Damodar	Jharia	Gurumahisani
8.8	Bokaro	Jharkhand	Damodar	Jharia	Gurumahisani

# Q3. Show the following major industrial regions on outline political map of India

Symbol	Industrial Region
A	Gurugram-Delhi-Meerut Region
В	Gujarat Region
C	Mumbai-Pune Region
D	Bengluru-Tamil Nadu Region
E	Kollam-Thiruvananthapuram Region
F	Vishakhapatnam-Guntur Region
G	Chotanagpur Region
Н	Hugli Region

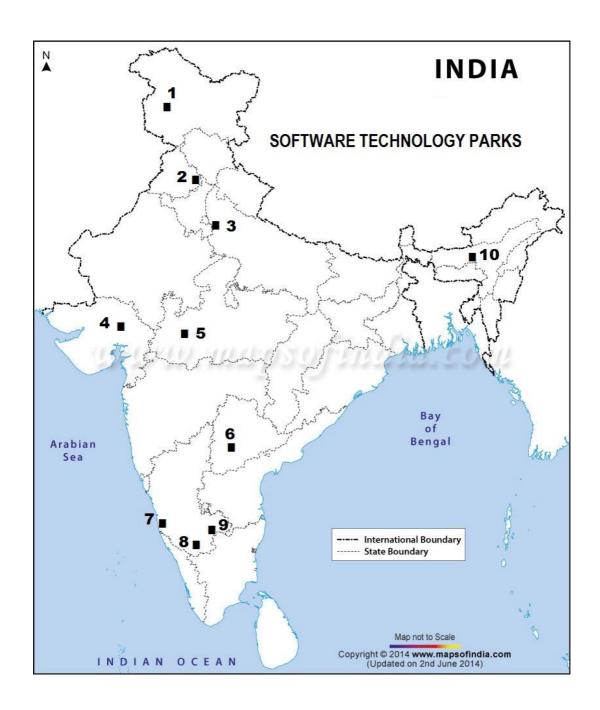
Ans-



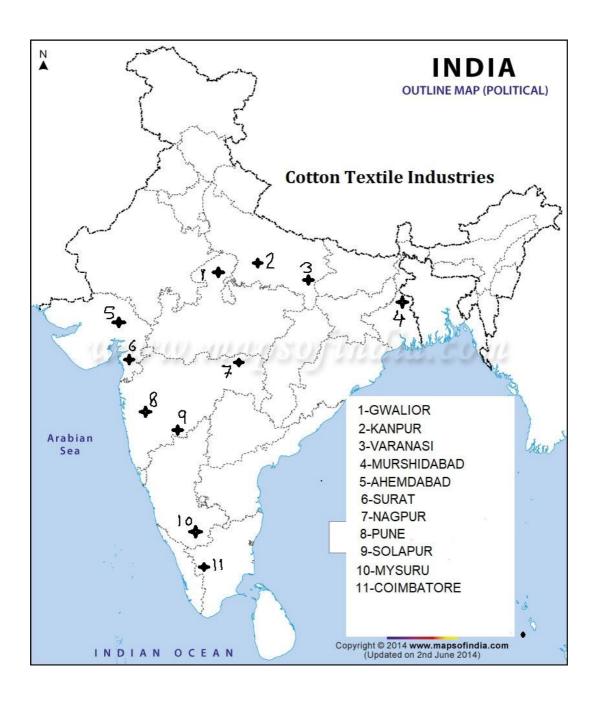
Q4. Show the following major software technology parks on outline political map of India

1 Srinagar	6 Hydrabad
2 Mohali	7 Manipur
3 Noida	8 Mysuru
4 Gandhinagar	9 Bengaluru
5 Indore	10 Guwahati

Ans-



Q5. Show all the major cotton textile industry on outline political map of India Ans-

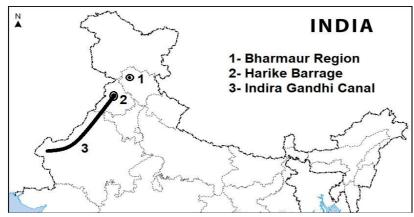


# CHAPTER-9 PLANNING AND SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT IN INDIAN CONTEXT

- Q1.- Show the following on the outline political map of the India-
- 1. Bharmaur region
- 2. Harike barrage (confluence of R.Sutlej&

- R. Beas)
- 3. Indira Gandhi Canal

Ans-



# CHAPTER 10 TRANSPORT AND COMMUNICATION

Q1.Show the following on the outline political map of India –

1- NH-7

2- NH-1

3- NH-2

4-NW-1

5-NW-2

6- Grand Trunk Road

7- Golden

**Quadrilateral** 

8- North-south corridor

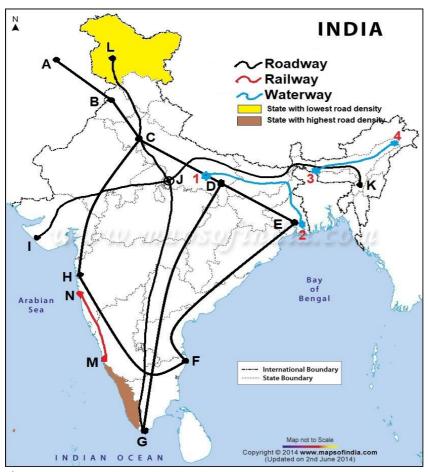
9-East-west corridor

10- Konkan railway

11- State with lowest road

density

12-State with highest road density 13- Head Quarter of central rly zone Ans-



Ans-

	INDEX				
S.No	Name of Route	Symbol	Terminal station		
1	NH-7	D-G	Varanasi [D] To Kanyakumari [G]		
	(Longest NH in India)				
2	NH-1	B-C	Amritsar[B] To Delhi [C]		
3	NH-2	C-E	Delhi [C] To Kolkata [E]		
4	NW-1	1-2	Allahabad [1] To Haldia [2]		
5	NW-2	3-4	Dhubri [3] To Sadia[4]		
6	Grand Trunk Road	A-E	Peshawar [A] To KolKata [E]		
	(Sher Shah Suri Marg)				

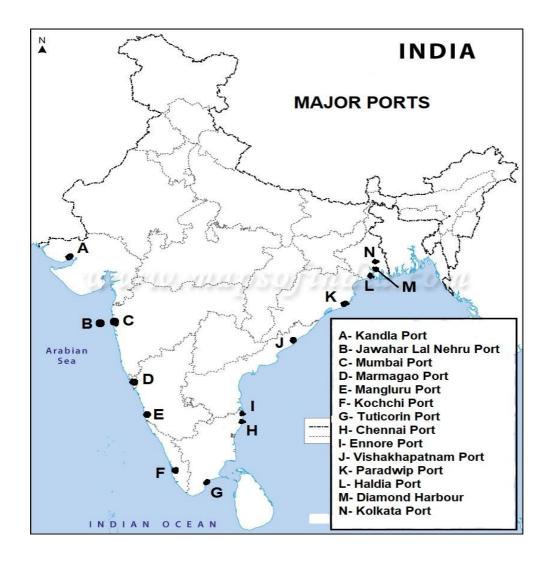
7	Golden Quadrilateral	C-E-F-H	Delhi [C]- Kolkata [E]-Chennai[F]-
			Mumbai[H]
8	North- South Corridor	L-G	Srinagar[L] To Kanyakumari [G]
9	East- West Corridor	I-K	Porbandar [I] To Silchar [K]
10	Konkan Railway	N-M	Roha[N] To Mangalore [M]
11	State with lowest Road Density		Jammu Kashmir
12	State with highest Road Density		Kerala
13	Head Quarters of Central Rly Zone		Mumbai CST

# CHAPTER-11 INTERNATIONAL TRADE

- Q1. Show the major ports of India on the outline political map of India.
- 1. Name the biggest port of India. (Mumbai port)
- 2.Name the largest container port of India ( Jawahar L N port or Nhava sheva)
- 3.Name the Riverine Port (on river Hoogli) ( DiamondHarbour ,Kolkata port & Haldia port)
- 4. Name the tidal ports of India (Diamond Harbour & Kandla port)
- 5 Name the deepest harbour (Paradwip port)
- 6.Name the Deepest land locked harbour (Vishakhapatnam port)
- 7. Name the second largest port of India (Chennai port)
- 8. Name the artificial port & biggest port in Bay of Bengal (Chennai port)
- 9. Name one port to reduce the pressure on Kolkata port ( Haldia port)
- 10. Name one port to reduce the pressure on Mumbai port (JLN port)
- 11. Name one port to reduce the pressure on Chennai port (Ennore port)
- 12. Name the port known as 'Queen of the Arabian Sea' (Kochchi port)

- 13. Name major port situated at the south end of Tamil Nadu (Tuticorin Port)
- 14. Name the major port of Goa (Marmagao Port)
- 15. Name the major port of Karnataka (Mangaluru Port)

## Ans-



# CHAPTER-12 GEOGRAPHICAL PERSPECTIVE ON SELECTED ISSUES AND PROBLEMS

Q1.- Show the following on the outline political map of the India-1.The Asia's largest slum. (Dharavi, Mumbai)

\*\*\*\*\*

# **SECTION-10**

# **Examination Tips to Students**

## A: - During Academic year

- 1. Start studies from day one
- 2. Make weekly time table to cover all subjects
- 3. Leave no pending work for next week; work should be done by Sunday/next holiday.
- 4. Practice diagrams and maps, they are very important help for learning other things also.
- 5. Discuss any doubts with your classmates, then with your teacher. Leave no doubts unsolved.
- 6. Read each and every line of the book. Under line important words/lines to revise in future.
- 7. Don't take pre board very lightly. It is must for learning time management.

## **B:** - **During pre-board examination**

- 1. Revise whole book once again during autumn break for preparation of preboard examination.
- 2. Second revision should be before first pre-board of the important points which you have noted before/ or from study material.
- 3. Third revision should be done during winter break to prepare for the second pre-board, reading each and every line of the book.
- 4. Summary revision just before exam from study material/notes.

## C:-Just before board examination

1. Good students who want to score high marks should go for third revision of the book, by each line during preparation leave for final examinations.

- 2. A few days before, practice 3 hrs question paper for time management.
- 3. Don't leave any question un attempted. Think for a minute and write by your logic.

God bless you!

\*\*\*\*\*\*



SET-1

# Series BVM/2

कोड नं. 64/2/1

रोल नं.				
Roll No.				

परीक्षार्थी कोड को उत्तर-पुस्तिका के मुख-पृष्ठ पर अवश्य लिखें।

Candidates must write the Code on the title page of the answer-book.

- कृपया जाँच कर लें कि इस प्रश्न-पत्र में मुद्रित पृष्ठ 12 हैं तथा 2 पृष्ठ मानचित्रों के हैं।
- प्रश्न-पत्र में दाहिने हाथ की ओर दिए गए कोड नम्बर को छात्र उत्तर-पुस्तिका के मुख-पृष्ठ पर लिखें।
- कृपया जाँच कर लें कि इस प्रश्न-पत्र में 22 प्रश्न हैं।
- कृपया प्रश्न का उत्तर लिखना शुरू करने से पहले, प्रश्न का क्रमांक अवश्य लिखें।
- इस प्रश्न-पत्र को पढ़ने के लिए 15 मिनट का समय दिया गया है । प्रश्न-पत्र का वितरण पूर्वाह्र में 10.15 बजे किया जाएगा । 10.15 बजे से 10.30 बजे तक छात्र केवल प्रश्न-पत्र को पढ़ेंगे और इस अवधि के दौरान वे उत्तर-पुस्तिका पर कोई उत्तर नहीं लिखेंगे ।
- Please check that this question paper contains 12 printed pages and 2 pages of maps.
- Code number given on the right hand side of the question paper should be written on the title page of the answer-book by the candidate.
- Please check that this question paper contains 22 questions.
- Please write down the Serial Number of the question before attempting it.
- 15 minute time has been allotted to read this question paper. The question paper will be distributed at 10.15 a.m. From 10.15 a.m. to 10.30 a.m., the students will read the question paper only and will not write any answer on the answer-book during this period.

# भूगोल (सैद्धान्तिक)

# **GEOGRAPHY** (Theory)

निर्धारित समय : 3 घण्टे अधिकतम अंक : 70

Time allowed: 3 hours Maximum Marks: 70



## सामान्य निर्देश:

- (i) इस प्रश्न-पत्र में कुल **22** प्रश्न हैं ।
- (ii) सभी प्रश्न अनिवार्य हैं।
- (iii) प्रश्न संख्या 1 से 7 अति लघु-उत्तरीय प्रश्न हैं । प्रत्येक प्रश्न 1 अंक का है । प्रत्येक प्रश्न का उत्तर 40 शब्दों से अधिक नहीं होना चाहिए ।
- (iv) प्रश्न संख्या 8 से 13 लघु-उत्तरीय प्रश्न हैं । प्रत्येक प्रश्न 3 अंक का है । प्रत्येक प्रश्न का उत्तर 80 – 100 शब्दों से अधिक नहीं होना चाहिए ।
- (v) प्रश्न संख्या 14 से 20 दीर्घ-उत्तरीय प्रश्न हैं । प्रत्येक प्रश्न 5 अंक का है । प्रत्येक प्रश्न का उत्तर 150 शब्दों से अधिक नहीं होना चाहिए ।
- (vi) प्रश्न संख्या 21 भौगोलिक लक्षणों को पहचानने तथा उनके नाम लिखने से संबंधित है, प्रश्न संख्या 22 भौगोलिक लक्षणों की स्थिति को उपयुक्त चिह्नों से दर्शाने से संबंधित है। प्रत्येक प्रश्न 5 अंक का है।
- (vii) आपको दिए गए **विश्व** तथा **भारत** के रेखा-मानचित्रों को उत्तर-पुस्तिका से संलग्न अवश्य करें।
- (viii) रेखा-मानचित्रों के रेखांकन के लिए **स्टेन्सिल** या **टेम्पलेट्स** के उपयोग की अनुमित दी जाती है।

### General Instructions:

- (i) There are 22 questions in all.
- (ii) **All** questions are compulsory.
- (iii) Question numbers 1 to 7 are very short-answer questions carrying 1 mark each. Answer to each of these questions should not exceed 40 words.
- (iv) Question numbers 8 to 13 are short-answer questions carrying 3 marks each. Answer to each of these questions should not exceed 80 100 words.
- (v) Question numbers 14 to 20 are long-answer questions carrying 5 marks each. Answer to each of these questions should not exceed 150 words.
- (vi) Question numbers **21** and **22** are related to identification or locating and labelling of geographical features on maps, carrying **5** marks each.
- (vii) Outline maps of the **World** and **India** provided to you must be attached within your answer-book.
- (viii) Use of templates or stencils for drawing outline maps is allowed.



#### खण्ड क

### **SECTION A**

- 1. यूरोप के अनेक देशों में लिंग अनुपात स्त्रियों के लिए अनुकूल क्यों है ? कोई एक कारण स्पष्ट कीजिए।

  Why is sex ratio favourable to women in many European countries?

  Explain any one reason.
- 2. महबूब-उल-हक द्वारा प्रारम्भ की गई, 'मानव विकास' की अवधारणा की परख कीजिए। 1 Examine the concept of 'human development' as introduced by Mahbub-ul-Haq.
- 3. संसार में ग्रामीण बस्तियों के 'रैखिक प्रतिरूप' की किन्हीं दो विशेषताओं का उल्लेख कीजिए।  $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} = 1$

#### अथवा

संसार में ग्रामीण बस्तियों के 'आयताकार प्रतिरूप' की किन्हीं दो विशेषताओं का उल्लेख कीजिए ।  $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} = 1$ 

Mention any two characteristics of 'linear pattern' of rural settlements in the world.

### OR

Mention any two characteristics of 'rectangular pattern' of rural settlements in the world.

- 4.'चिकित्सा पर्यटन' का अर्थ लिखिए ।1Write the meaning of 'medical tourism'.
- 5. छत्तीसगढ़ का मानव विकास सूचकांक (एच.डी.आई.) में सबसे निम्न स्थान क्यों है ? 1
  Why has Chhattisgarh recorded the lowest level in the Human Development Index (H.D.I.)?
- **6.** भारत में जल की गुणवत्ता के हास के किन्हीं दो कारणों का उल्लेख कीजिए ।  $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} = 1$

### अथवा

भारत में जल के संरक्षण की किन्हीं दो विधियों का उल्लेख कीजिए।  $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} = 1$ 

Mention any two reasons for the deterioration of water quality in India.

#### OR.

Mention any two methods for the conservation of water in India.



वायु प्रदूषण, मानव स्वास्थ्य को किस प्रकार प्रभावित करता है ?

#### अथवा

ध्वनि प्रद्षण, मानव स्वास्थ्य को किस प्रकार प्रभावित करता है ?

How does air pollution affect human health?

#### OR

How does noise pollution affect human health?

## खण्ड ख SECTION B

8. "मानव संसाधनों के लिए प्रत्यक्षत: प्रकृति पर निर्भर हैं, जो उन्हें जीवित बनाए रखती है।" इस कथन की परख कीजिए।

#### अथवा

"प्रकृति का ज्ञान प्रौद्योगिकी को विकसित करने के लिए अति महत्त्वपूर्ण है।" इस कथन की परख कीजिए।

1

1

3

3

"Human beings are directly dependent on nature for resources which sustain them." Examine the statement.

#### OR

"The knowledge about nature is extremely important to develop technology." Examine the statement.

9. दी गई तालिका का अध्ययन कीजिए और उसके नीचे दिए गए प्रश्नों के उत्तर लिखिए : 1+1+1=3

विश्व : आयात और निर्यात (यू.एस. दस लाख डालरों में)

	निर्यात	आयात
	कुल व्यापारिक माल	कुल व्यापारिक माल
1955	95,000	99,000
1965	1,90,000	1,99,000
1975	8,77,000	9,12,000
1985	19,54,000	20,15,000
1995	51,62,000	52,92,000
2005	1,03,93,000	1,07,53,000
2015	1,55,83,232	1,56,28,204

- (9.1) व्यापार का कौन-सा रूप (पहलू) तीव्र वृद्धि को दर्शाता है ?
- (9.2) क्या कुल व्यापार के परिमाण में वृद्धि हुई या कमी हुई ?
- (9.3) आयात क्यों किया जाता है ? कोई दो कारण लिखिए।



Study the following table and answer the questions that follow:

World: Imports and Exports (in millions of U.S. \$)

	Exports	Imports
	Total Merchandise	Total Merchandise
1955	95,000	99,000
1965	1,90,000	1,99,000
1975	8,77,000	9,12,000
1985	19,54,000	20,15,000
1995	51,62,000	52,92,000
2005	1,03,93,000	1,07,53,000
2015	1,55,83,232	1,56,28,204

- (9.1) Which aspect of trade has shown rapid growth?
- (9.2) Has the total volume of trade increased or decreased?
- (9.3) Why does import take place? Write any two reasons.

नोट: निम्नलिखित प्रश्न केवल **दृष्टिबाधित परीक्षार्थियों** के लिए, प्रश्न संख्या 9 के स्थान पर है:

**Note:** The following question is for the **Visually Impaired Candidates** only, in lieu of Q. No. 9:

अन्तर्राष्ट्रीय व्यापार के तीन महत्त्वपूर्ण पहलुओं की व्याख्या कीजिए ।  $1\times 3=3$  Explain three important aspects of international trade.

- 10. "1901 से 1921 की अवधि को भारत की जनसंख्या वृद्धि की रुद्ध अथवा स्थिर प्रावस्था के रूप में जाना जाता है।" इस कथन को प्रमाणित कीजिए। "The period from 1901 to 1921 is referred to as a stagnant phase of India's population growth." Substantiate the statement.
- 11. प्रवास के कारण भिन्न संस्कृतियों के लोगों के आपस में मिलने-जुलने से किस प्रकार सकारात्मक मूल्य प्रकट होते हैं ? व्याख्या कीजिए ।

  How does intermixing of people from diverse cultures due to migration have positive values ? Explain.
- 12. मुग़ल काल के दौरान भारत में मध्यकालीन नगरों के विकास का वर्णन कीजिए।
  अथवा
  ब्रिटिश शासन के दौरान, भारत के आधुनिक नगरों के विकास का वर्णन कीजिए।
  Describe the development of medieval towns in India during the Mughal

### OR

Describe the development of modern towns in India during the British period.

period.

3

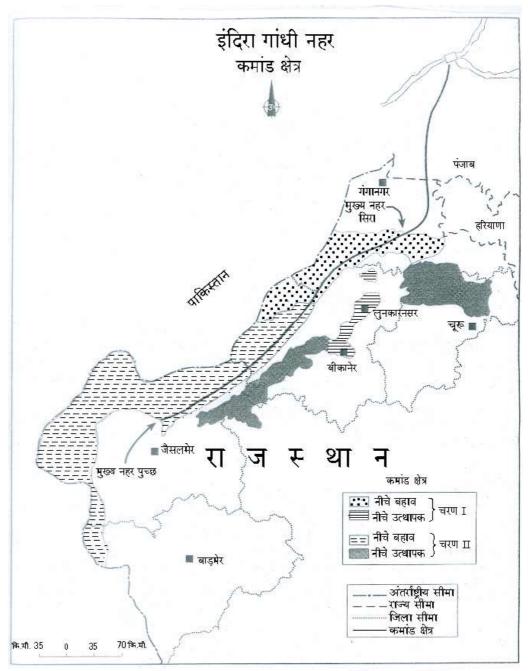
3

3

3



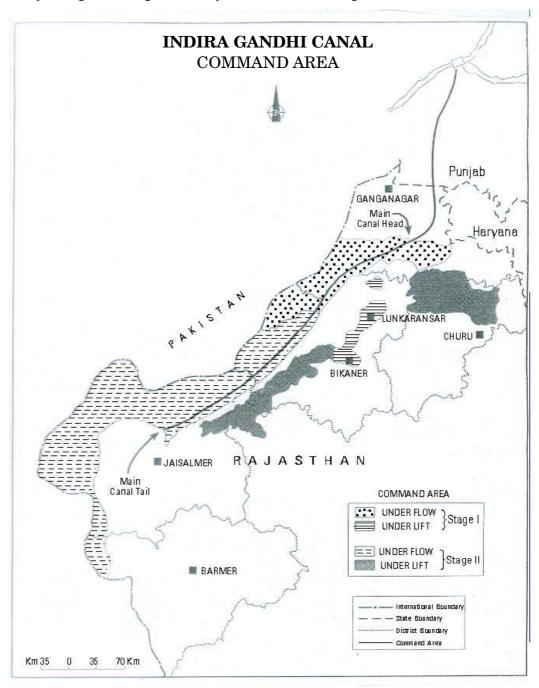
13. दिए गए मानचित्र का सावधानीपूर्वक अध्ययन कीजिए और उसके नीचे दिए गए प्रश्नों के उत्तर लिखिए : 1+1+1=3



- (13.1) इस नहर के उद्गम के स्रोत का उल्लेख कीजिए।
- (13.2) इस नहर का पूर्वी क्षेत्र उत्थापक सिंचाई के अन्तर्गत क्यों आता है ?
- (13.3) इस नहर का कमांड क्षेत्र के लिए आर्थिक महत्त्व स्पष्ट कीजिए।



Study the given map carefully and answer the questions that follow:



- (13.1) Mention the source of origin of this canal.
- (13.2) Why is the area to the east of the canal under lift irrigation?
- (13.3) Explain the economic significance of this canal for the command area.



**नोट :** निम्नलिखित प्रश्न केवल **दृष्टिबाधित परीक्षार्थियों** के लिए, प्रश्न संख्या 13 के स्थान पर है :

**Note:** The following question is for the **Visually Impaired Candidates** only, in lieu of Q. No. 13:

"इंदिरा गाँधी नहर के द्वारा सिंचाई के प्रसार से नहर कमांड क्षेत्र की कृषि अर्थव्यवस्था प्रत्यक्ष रूप से रूपान्तरित हो गई है।" इस कथन को स्पष्ट कीजिए।  $1\times 3=3$ 

"Introduction of irrigation through Indira Gandhi Canal has brought about a visible change in the agricultural economy of the canal command area." Explain the statement.

#### खण्ड ग

#### SECTION C

- 14. संसार में जनसंख्या के वितरण को प्रभावित करने वाले आर्थिक और सांस्कृतिक कारकों की व्याख्या कीजिए। 3+2=5 Explain the economic and cultural factors that influence the distribution of population in the world.
- **16.** संसार में 'छोटे पैमाने के उद्योग' और 'बड़े पैमाने के उद्योग' में अन्तर स्पष्ट कीजिए ।  $1 \times 5 = 5$

#### अथवा

संसार में कृषि-आधारित उद्योगों और खनिज-आधारित उद्योगों में अन्तर स्पष्ट कीजिए ।  $1\times5=5$  Differentiate between 'small scale manufacturing' and 'large scale manufacturing' in the world.

5

5

### OR.

Differentiate between agro-based industries and mineral-based industries in the world.

17. 'पार-साइबेरियन रेलमार्ग' के महत्त्व का वर्णन कीजिए।

#### अथवा

'पार-कैनेडियन रेलमार्ग' के महत्त्व का वर्णन कीजिए।

Describe the significance of 'Trans-Siberian Railway'.

#### OR.

Describe the significance of 'Trans-Canadian Railway'.

64/2/1



**18.** भारत में 'आधुनिक कृषीय प्रौद्योगिकी' ने कृषि के उत्पादन में किस प्रकार महत्त्वपूर्ण वृद्धि की  $1 \times 5 = 5$ 

Explain with examples how 'modern agricultural technology' has brought a significant increase in agricultural output in India.

19. "भारत में ऊर्जा के अपरंपरागत स्रोत अधिक टिकाऊ और पर्यावरण अनुकूल ऊर्जा उपलब्ध कराएँगे।" इस कथन की परख कीजिए।

#### अथवा

"भारत के विकास के लिए खनिज संसाधनों का संरक्षण करना अत्यावश्यक है।" इस कथन की परख कीजिए।

"The non-conventional sources of energy in India will provide more sustained and environment friendly energy." Examine the statement.

#### OR.

"Conservation of mineral resources is essential for the development of India." Examine the statement.

- 20. "भारतीय रेल-जाल संसार के सर्वाधिक लम्बे रेल जालों में से एक है और उसने देश के आर्थिक विकास में महत्त्वपूर्ण योगदान दिया है।" इस कथन की पुष्टि कीजिए। 3+2= "Indian railways network is one of the longest networks of the world and has contributed a lot to the growth of the economy." Support the
- **21. संसार** के दिए गए राजनीतिक रेखा-मानचित्र (पृष्ठ 13 पर), में पाँच भौगोलिक लक्षणों को A, B, C, D और E से दिखाया गया है । उनकी पहचान निम्नलिखित जानकारी की मदद से कीजिए और उनके सही नाम उनके पास खींची गई रेखाओं पर लिखिए :  $1 \times 5 = 5$ 
  - A. चलवासी पश्चारण का क्षेत्र
  - B. औद्योगिक प्रदेश
  - С. अन्तर्राष्ट्रीय हवाई पत्तन
  - D. मेगा सिटी

statement.

E. 'पार-महाद्वीपीय रेलमार्ग' के सिरे का स्टेशन

5

5



On the given political outline map of the **World** (on page 13), five geographical features have been marked as A, B, C, D and E. Identify them with the help of the following information and write their correct names on the lines drawn near them:

- A. An area of nomadic herding
- B. An industrial region
- C. An international airport
- D. A mega city
- E. The terminal station of 'Trans-Continental Railway'

नोट: निम्नलिखित प्रश्न केवल **दृष्टिबाधित परीक्षार्थियों** के लिए, प्रश्न संख्या 21 के स्थान पर हैं:

**Note:** The following questions are for the **Visually Impaired Candidates** only, in lieu of Q. No. 21:

- (21.1) अफ्रीका में किसी एक चलवासी पश्चारण क्षेत्र का उल्लेख कीजिए।
- (21.2) यूरोप के किसी एक औद्योगिक प्रदेश का नाम लिखिए।
- (21.3) संयुक्त राज्य अमेरिका के किसी एक अन्तर्राष्ट्रीय हवाई पत्तन का नाम लिखिए।
- (21.4) ब्राज़ील के किसी एक 'मेगा सिटी' का नाम लिखिए।
- (21.5) पार-साइबेरियन रेलमार्ग के किसी एक सिरे के स्टेशन का नाम लिखिए ।  $1 \times 5 = 5$
- (21.1) Mention any one area of nomadic herding in Africa.
- (21.2) Name any one industrial region of Europe.
- (21.3) Name any one international airport of the United States of America.
- (21.4) Name any one mega city of Brazil.
- (21.5) Name any one terminal station of Trans-Siberian Railway.



. भारत के दिए गए राजनीतिक रेखा-मानचित्र (पृष्ठ 15 पर), में निम्नलिखित में से *किन्हीं पाँच* भौगोलिक लक्षणों को दिखाइए और उनके नाम लिखिए : 1×5=5

- (22.1) पश्चिम बंगाल का 10 मिलियन से अधिक जनसंख्या वाला शहर
- (22.2) कपास का अग्रणी उत्पादक राज्य
- (22.3) पंजाब में सॉफ्टवेयर टेक्नोलॉजी पार्क
- (22.4) दक्षिण (सदर्न) रेल मण्डल का मुख्यालय
- (22.5) कर्नाटक में अन्तर्राष्ट्रीय हवाई पत्तन
- (22.6) गुजरात में प्रमुख समुद्री पत्तन
- (22.7) खेतडी की ताँबा खानें
- (22.8) नगरीकरण के सबसे कम स्तर वाला राज्य

Locate and label *any five* of the following geographical features on the given political outline map of **India** (on page 15):

- (22.1) The city with more than 10 million population in West Bengal
- (22.2) The leading producer State of cotton
- (22.3) The software technology park in Punjab
- (22.4) The Headquarter of Southern Railway Zone
- (22.5) The international airport in Karnataka
- (22.6) The major seaport in Gujarat
- (22.7) Khetri copper mines
- (22.8) The State with lowest level of urbanisation

नोट : निम्नलिखित प्रश्न केवल **दृष्टिबाधित परीक्षार्थियों** के लिए, प्रश्न संख्या 22 के स्थान पर हैं। **कोई पाँच** प्रश्न हल करने हैं।

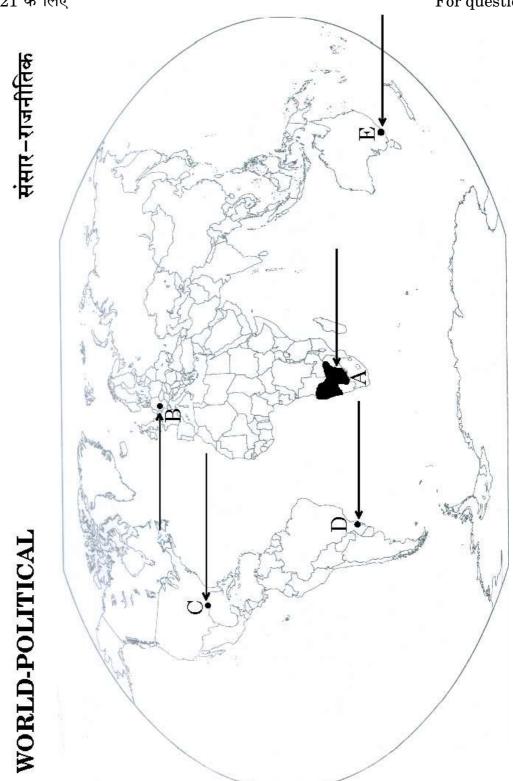
**Note:** The following questions are for the **Visually Impaired Candidates** only, in lieu of Q. No. 22. Attempt **any five** questions.

- (22.1) पश्चिम बंगाल में स्थित 10 मिलियन से अधिक जनसंख्या वाले शहर का नाम लिखिए।
- (22.2) भारत में कौन-सा राज्य कपास का अग्रणी उत्पादक है ?
- (22.3) पंजाब में स्थित सॉफ्टवेयर टेक्नोलॉजी पार्क का नाम लिखिए ।
- (22.4) दक्षिण (सदर्न) रेल मण्डल का मुख्यालय कौन-सा है ?
- (22.5) कर्नाटक में स्थित अन्तर्राष्ट्रीय हवाई पत्तन का नाम लिखिए।
- (22.6) गुजरात में स्थित प्रमुख समुद्री पत्तन का नाम लिखिए ।
- (22.7) खेतडी की ताँबा खानें भारत के किस राज्य में स्थित हैं ?
- (22.8) भारत के नगरीकरण के सबसे कम स्तर वाले राज्य का नाम लिखिए ।  $1 \times 5 = 5$
- (22.1) Name the city located in West Bengal having more than 10 million population.
- (22.2) Which is the leading producer State of cotton in India?
- (22.3) Name the software technology park located in Punjab.
- (22.4) Which is the Headquarter of Southern Railway Zone?
- (22.5) Name the international airport located in Karnataka.
- (22.6) Name the major seaport located in Gujarat.
- (22.7) In which State of India are Khetri copper mines located?
- (22.8) Name the State of India having the lowest level of urbanization.

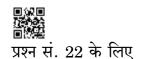
64/2/1

प्रश्न सं. 21 के लिए

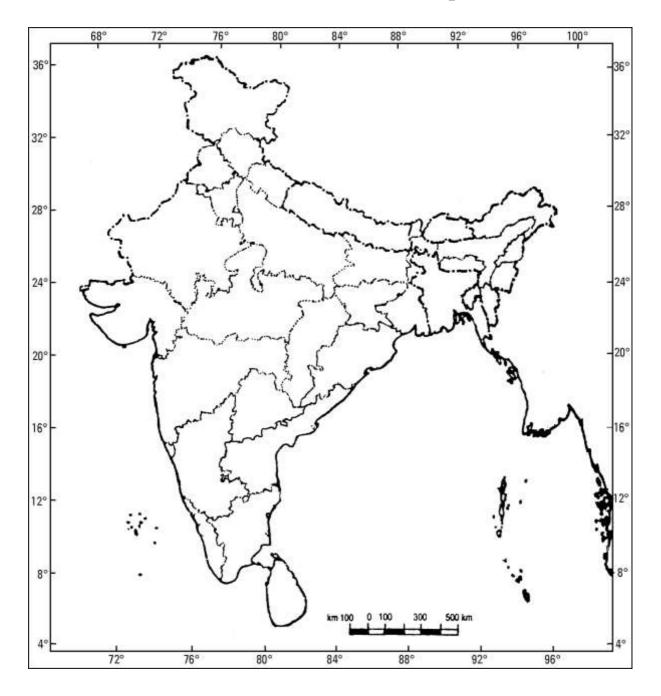
For question no. 21







# भारत का रेखा-मानचित्र (राजनीतिक) Outline Map of India (Political)





तत् त्वं पूषन् अपावृणु केन्द्रीय विद्यालय संगठन



# केन्द्रीय विद्यालय संगठन KENDRIYA VIDYALAYA SANGATHAN

18, संस्थागत क्षेत्र, शहीद जीत सिंह मार्ग, नई दिल्ली-110016 18, Institutional Area, Shaheed Jeet Singh Marg, New Delhi-110016 Website : www.kvsangathan.nic.in

🜃 @KVSHQ 🏒 @KVS\_HQ

CHOUDHARY PRINTING PRESS, Near Mohan Mob.: 09430906087, 07902399242, T/F: 0612-E-mail - choudharyprintingpress@gnail.com, M